



THAMAS KOULI-KAN, at Present called  
NADIR SCHAH, Emperor or Sophi of PERSIA,  
Conqueror of Indostan, &c. Aged 56 Years. Done  
from an Original Drawing now in y<sup>e</sup> Possession of  
Prince Cantemir y<sup>e</sup> Russian Ambassador at Paris.

Gravée par J. Bortard à Paris 1742.



THAMAS KOULI-KAN, at Present called  
NADIR SCHAH, Emperor or Sophi of PERSIA,  
Conqueror of Indostan, &c. Aged 56 Years. Done  
from an Original Drawing now in y<sup>e</sup> Possession of  
Prince Cantemir y<sup>e</sup> Russian Ambassador at Paris.

Gravée par J. Bortard à Paris 1742.



Nadir Shah, ~~Shah~~ of Persia

THE  
COMPLEAT HISTORY  
OF  
THAMAS KOULI KAN,  
(At present called SCHAH NADIR)  
Sovereign of PERSIA.  
In Two Parts.

PART I. Containing a Description of the *Persian* Empire ; an Account of the Religion and Manners of the *Persians* ; a Chronological Abridgment of their History, including the Lives and Reigns of *Cyrus* and his Descendents, the *Arscidae*, the *Caliphs*, the *Tartar* Princes, and the *Sophis*, down to the late Revolutions ; a particular Account of the *Aghwans*, and their Leaders *Mir-Weis*, *Mahmond*, and *Eschref*, to their total Reduction by *Kouli Kan* ; the Origin and Rise of this Commander, his Wars with the Rebels and the *Turks*, and his artful Assumption of the Crown.

PART II. Containing a Description of the Empire of *Indostan*, and a Character of the *Indians* ; some Account of all the *Great Moguls* from *Tamerlane* down to *Mahmet-Cba* now reigning ; Grounds of *Kouli Kan's* Quarrel with this Latter ; his Invasion of the Kingdom of *Cabul*, and the whole Progress of his Arms till he entirely defeats, deposes, and generously restores his Enemy, after having taken from him an Immense Booty, obtained the Cession of Part of his Dominions, and obliged him to an Annual Tribute. With Copies of Letters, Edicts, Manifesto's, &c. translated from the Originals under the Hands of both Monarchs.

---

Written in *French*, and rendered into *English* with Improvements.

---

To which are Added,

An Appendix by the Translator, and an Alphabetical Index ; a new Map of *Persia* and the bordering Countries, and a fine Head of *Kouli Kan*, engraved at *Paris* from an Original in the Possession of Prince *Cantemir* the *Russian* Embassador.

L O N D O N :

Printed for J. BRINDLEY, at the *King's Arms* in *New-Bond-street*, Bookseller to his Royal Highness the Prince of *Wales* ; S. BIRT, in *Ave-Mary Lane* ; J. HODGES, on *London-Bridge* ; J. ROBINSON in *Ludgate-street* ; and sold by most Booksellers both in Town and Country, MDCCXLII.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION  
1892

# THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY


ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION  
1892

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION  
1892



T H E

# Translator's ADVERTISEMENT.

 HAVE given the Contents of this *Curious History* so fully in the Title, that it would be superfluous to repeat them here. Which Method I should not have chosen, were it not necessary to put This in fair Competition with another Performance lately Published (long since the first Part of this, and more than two Months since the second Part was advertised) entitled, *A Genuine History of Nadir-Cha.*

As I could not imagine how more genuine Materials than what my Author had made Use of could be procured, it was with some Eagerness that I read over the *new Pamphlet*. Materials indeed it contains, but neither newer nor better than ours: The same Brick and Stone, without Cement, without Workmanship: An Appendix of Authorities, that wants only the Narrative before them.

I own the Editor, to make us some amends, has been very bountiful in his Introduction: Thanks to him for so much delectable Entertainment, which might be equally found in  
any

## ADVERTISEMENT.

any *Atlas* ! My Author too describes Countries and Cities ; gives an Idea of History from the earliest Times to those he writes of ; but does it in a Manner so much his own, that the Whole becomes entirely New. When he brings you to *Labor, Deli, or Agra*, then, and not before, he leads you all over the Place, and makes you as well acquainted with every public Building, as *Mainland* can make you with those in *London*.

IN a Word, if lively, gay Descriptions, pertinent, smart, and sometimes satirical Reflexions, happy Conjectures, with so much of the Authorities intermixed as may convince without tiring the Reader : If these are preferable to very jejune, imperfect Narrations, intermixed with unintelligible Strains of *Asiatic* Eloquence (pretty equal Portions of which two enter into the Composition of the *Genuine History*) I make no question but the Work now published will be preferred to a bare Collection of *some* of the Memoirs upon which it is founded.

### Jure Divino : *An Epigram.*

**S**Ee how *Ambition* variously succeeds,  
As different Councils prompt to equal Deeds !  
It brands with Infamy the rash Design  
Of Warbeck, Massaniell, and Cataline.  
It lifts to Monarchy the Private Man :  
In Cæsar, Cromwell, and in KOULI-KAN.  
The same their Motives, not the Men's Address ;  
And *Right Divine* is but *Supreme Success*.

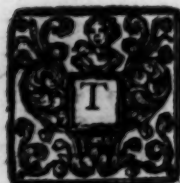








THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
THAMAS KOULI KAN.



THE History I am about to write, will certainly raise the Curiosity of the Public: And the Reader will doubtless earnestly desire to be perfectly acquainted with a Warrior, whose Fame has reached the utmost Bounds of the World. But as the Kingdom of *Persia*, the Theatre on which such noble Atchievements have been performed, is not universally known, I shall first give an Idea of its Extent, Situation, Riches, and Strength; of its Inhabitants, their Manners and Religion. I shall introduce next a Chronological Abstract of most  
B of



of its Kings; and relate, as concisely as possible, the chief Revolutions it has undergone, those in particular which have promoted this our great Warrior to the Throne of the Sophies.

Descripti-  
on of *Per-*  
*sia*.

*Persia* is one of the largest Empires in the World: Its Length above six hundred common *French Leagues*, and almost equally broad. *Turkey* borders upon it Westward, *Tartary* on the North, the *Indies* on the East, and on the South the Eastern Ocean. The *Tigris*, the *Euphrates*, and the *Persian Gulph* part it from the Grand Signior's Dominions. Towards the Kingdom of *Astracan*, it reaches to the *Caspian* or *Hyrceanian-Sea*, known at this Time by the Name of *Mar di Sala*. The River *Oxus*, now called *Gihon*, is the Boundary of this great Kingdom, towards *Tartary*; and the River *Indus* is not at a great Distance from its Confines, on the Side of the *Mogul*. *Persia* is usually divided into twenty three Provinces. *Irak-Agemi*, *Chusistan*, *Loristan*, *Fars*, *Lar*, *Kirman*, *Sigistan* or *Drangiana*, *Zablustan*, *Manzanderan*, *Kilan*, *Tabristan*, *Adirbeizan*, *Albania*, called by some Writers *Alban*, *Schirwan*, *Moghostan*, *Chorazan*, *Candabar*, *Hazaray*, *Send*, *Daghestan*, *Georgia*, and *Armenia*. Besides the Islands of *Ormus*, *Kesem*, *Lareck*, and some others of less Note.

Moun-  
tains in  
*Persia*.  
The  
Highest is  
*Caucasus*.

Mountains of a prodigious Height are to be seen in *Persia*. *Mount Caucasus* is towards *Georgia*, near the River *Phasis*. The Top of it is always covered with Snow: It presents to the View chiefly Rocks and Stones; yet in some Places Travellers meet with agreeable and fruitful Plains, delightful Villages,

Villages, watered by many Rivers, the Waters of which are very clear and sweet. At the Bottom of this Hill lies a charming Valley, six Leagues in Length. The River *Kur* runs thro' it, and the Inhabitants of the small Towns which adorn it, are blessed with Plenty of Wine: It contains the Ruins of some Castles, demolished, as they say, by the *Turks*. Eight or ten Leagues from thence is the Castle of *Akalzike*, which tho' in a Bottom, and surrounded by twenty Hills which command it, is looked upon as a strong Fort. It is the Residence of a *Bassa*, who is the Governor. Towards the End of the sixteenth Century, the *Georgians* who are under the Protection of *Persia*, took this Castle from the *Turks*.

Fort *Usker* lies at three or four Leagues Distance; it is built on the right Side of the River *Kur*, at the Top of a Rock, and contains a Garrison of four hundred Men, headed by a *Sangiack*. Four Leagues from *Fort-Usker*, is a Mountain which parts the *Turkish* and *Persian* Empires.

*Mount Taurus* rises in *Persia*, and reaches to the *Indies*. It is the longest in the whole World. *Mount Taurus is the longest.*

*Mount Ararat* is in *Armenia*, at a small Distance from the Town of *Erivan*. The *Persians* call it *Agri*, the *Arabs*, *Subalaha*, and the *Armenians*, *Mesefonsar*. It is become famous for being, as is pretended, the Place where *Noah's Ark* rested after the Deluge. Some believe that the Remains of it are still to be seen there: And the *Armenians*, who are the most superstitious of the *Grecian Church*, never approach this Hill with-

*Mount Ararat in Armenia.*

## The HISTORY of

out making several Times the Sign of the Cross, and repeated Genuflections, or Bending the Knee.

There was heretofore, they say, a Road leading to the Top of this Hill, where the old Relicks of *Noah's Ark* might be seen: But an unlucky Earthquake having stopped up that Passage, it is become impossible to have an ocular Demonstration of the Truth of this Tradition; which renders it very much suspected of Forgery.

*The Caspian-Sea.*

The *Caspian-Sea* parts *Persia* from the Kingdom of *Astracan*, and has no Communication with any other Sea. It is rather a great Lake formed by several Rivers which run into it. Hitherto no one has thought proper to sail in it. The Czar *Peter the Great* had formed a Project to make it navigable: All the necessary Preparations for such an Undertaking were ready: But the Death of that Prince rendered the Design abortive.

*Euphrates.*

The River *Euphrates* is one of the greatest and most famous in the World. It takes its Rising from *Mount Ararat*. At first it shapes its Course from East to West: But near *Etzerum* it turns to the South, and parts *Natolia* from *Armenia*, *Syria* from *Di-arbeck*, and *Mesopotamia* from *Arabia*. Having in its Progress washed the Walls of several Cities, it discharges its Waters into the *Tigris* below *Seleucia*, very near *Ctesiphon*. *Pliny* and *Strabo* relate that it overflows its Banks as the *Nile* does.

*Tigris.*

The *Tigris* or *Tegil*, in *Hebrew* *Hiddekel*, has its Source in *Armenia*, near a Place called *Elegosin*. At first it bears the Name  
of

of *Diglito*; but beginning to flow with that surprizing Rapidity peculiar to it above all other Rivers, it receives the Denomination of *Tigris*, which in the *Medes* Language signifies an Arrow. Having passed through the Lake of *Arethusa*, and parted *Syria* from *Mesopotamia*, it divides into two Branches, which form a large Island, and reuniting, take the Name of *Pasitigris*. Then it receives the *Euphrates*, and, by two Mouths, dis-embogues itself at last in the *Persian* Gulph. The Rapidity of its Course is such, that, as some Travellers say, it goes farther in one Day than a Horseman can do in seven. Others assure us that its Motion is so quick, that it dazzles the Eyes of the Beholders, and makes their Heads swim.

The *Indus* has its Source from *Caucasus*, *Indus*. gives its Name to that Part of the Continent called *India*, parts it from *Persia*, and discharges itself into the Sea of that Denomination. The Breadth of it is in some Places six *French* Leagues, in others ten.

The River *Oxus* rises in the Mountain called *Paraponisus*, and joining its Waters to the River *Ardack*, falls into the Lake *Pathack*. *Oxus*.

There are two Rivers in *Persia*, which bear the Name of *Araxes*: The largest and most celebrated jets out of *Mount Ararat*, runs thro' the Province of *Kilan*, and ends in the *Caspian-Sea*. *Araxes*.

*Persia* is not equally fruitful in all Places; Of *Persia* it contains some Desarts of a large Extent. in General. In the Province of *Manzanderan*, betwixt *ral*. *Caspian* and *Ferhabad*, whole Plains, about ten Leagues long, and six or seven broad, are

are covered with a white shining Salt of a good Flavour; but the *Persians* use it not, because they have better in the Mines amongst the Hills. That Road is very dangerous after Rain; for if one goes the least out of the high Road, one runs the Risk of falling into deep Pits filled with that Salt, moisten'd by the Water, from which it is very difficult to get out.

The Fruit-  
fulness of  
it.

These barren Places are very advantageously counter-balanced by the Fruitfulness of others, which abound in Wheat, Rice, Melons, Pomegranates, Almonds, Dates, sweet-smelling and other Spices. Whole Woods are made up of Lemon, Orange, Cypress, and Palm-Trees. All tame and wild Fowl are in great Plenty. Their Cattle is very large, and of a delicious Taste. They have Camels, Dromedaries, and Elephants. Their Breed of Horses is not inferior to those of any other Country in the World, for Beauty, Swiftnefs, and Strength. Some Provinces being destitute of Water, are by Consequence deprived of Fish. *Persia* has Gold and Silver Mines, and abounds with precious Stones. The Island of *Ormus* supplies them with exquisitely fine Pearls: Marble and Jasper are not wanting.

Its Trade.

The prodigious Quantity of Silk produced in that Country, occasions an extensive Trade of Stuffs and Tapestry. Their Wine is very good, and of a delicate Flavour. The superstitious Devotion of the Natives, who think it unlawful to drink of it, is the only Cause of its Scarcity. However, it is easy to judge of the Revenue and formidable Power of that Kingdom: Their Commerce  
of

The  
King's  
Revenue.



of Silk Stuffs alone bring in ten Millions of Crowns for the Duty on Exportation; and in general the King's Income amounts to about six hundred Millions of Crowns.

Several Princes are Vassals to this Monarch: Princes They take upon them the Name and Stile of are his *Sultans* or *Kans*. Some are hereditary; others Vassals. hold their Dignity from the King's Bounty, and at his Pleasure; he may depose them when he thinks fit. He appoints Governors called *Daroga's*, or *Vizir's*, over the Towns and Provinces which are immediately dependant on him.

Having thus given some Account of *Persia* in general; we must now enter upon the particular Provinces which compose this great Empire.

The Province of *Irack-Agemi* has the Title Province of a Kingdom; they believe it to be the an- of *Irack-* tient *Persia*, and the Residence of the *Par-Agemi.* *Agemi.* The Provinces of *Adirbeizan*, *Chorazan*, *Fars*, *Chusistan*, *Kilan*, and *Tabristan* surround it. The *Persians*, out of Respect for, and as a peculiar Honour paid to this Province, are pleased sometimes to denote the whole Kingdom of *Persia* by the Name of *Irack*.—The capital City of this Province is *Ispahan*, the ordinary Place of Residence for their Kings: The most considerable Towns besides are *Caswin*, *Casbian*, *Sultania*, *Yezd*, and *Ferhabad the Lesser*.

*Ispahan* is situated in a Plain on the Banks Descrip- of the River *Senderut*. Till the Reign of tion of *Tamerlane* it bore the Name of *Sipahan*, *Ispahan.* which was then changed into *Ispahan*. Some pretend that it is the same as *Hecatompolis*, built by the *Greeks* under *Alexander the Great*,  
and

and so called from its hundred Gates: Others are of Opinion it is the antient *Ecbatane*. Be that as it will, *Ispahan* is at present one of the greatest Cities in the East; the Circumference of it, including the Suburbs, is at least ten *French Leagues*. 'Tis divided into two different Quarters, the Inhabitants of which are always at Variance; and for Reasons of State this Division is underhand fomented by the Kings of *Persia*.

This capital City is but meanly fortified; a weak Wall, half thrown down, and a sorry Ditch are its only Defence. The River *Senderut* supplies the Town with Water, and by the Contrivance of Pipes, waters the King's Gardens and those of the Nobility. Their Houses are mostly square, made of Brick, two, three, and sometimes four Stories high. The Windows are so high and broad that they look like Doors; they are not kept close with Panes of Glass, but with Sashes of oil'd Paper.

The Streets, a few excepted, are narrow, not laid out in a Line, nor paved, and by Consequence very ugly and nasty. The *Meidan*, or Great Place, is the finest in all *Persia*; it is seven hundred Paces long, and two hundred and fifty broad. The South Side, in which is the King's Palace, is full of noble Shops belonging to Merchants. Over-against it is a most noble Alley or Range of Trees, regularly and artfully cut. In the Middle of this Walk stands a magnificent Fountain, the Waters of which over-flowing the Bason into which they fall, glide by different Channels, till they all meet in one Place, and there form a kind of Cistern.

The



The whole *Meidan* is encompassed with Galleries to walk in, and be sheltered from the Rain: Under them Pipers and Kettle-drummers place themselves, to give Notice of the Rising and Setting of the Sun by the Sound of their Musical Instruments. They are likewise obliged to play, whenever the King comes out of, and back into his Palace.

This Palace is exceeding fine, raised very high, and the greatest Ornament of the *Meidan*. Before the Gates of it a hundred and ten Cannons are ready mounted upon their Carriages. The *Persians* brought this Ordnance from the Island of *Ormus*, when they recovered it from the *Portuguese* who had seized upon it. The King's Apartments are called *Deka*; the rest is the *Tabé-Chane*, or Great-Room, in which the *Persian* Monarch holds his Assemblies or Meetings with the Sultans or Kans of his Empire. From this Room one enters into the *Divan-Chane*, where the King's Council deliberates on State Affairs, and his Majesty gives Orders to the Ambassadors of crown'd Heads.

On one Side of this Room is that called *Haram-Chane*, where the King's Wives or Concubines meet to dance in his Presence, or to give him some other Diversion.

The Inclosure of this Palace contains several Gardens and Pleasure-Houses. One of them is named *Alla-capi*, the *Gate of God*. It is an Asylum for Bankrupts, and for those who involuntarily kill any one.

At the other End of the *Meidan*, is a particular Quarter which enjoys several Privileges, ever since many Thousands of the Inhabitants

*The HISTORY of*

habitants retired thither, when *Tamerlane* punished that City for a Rebellion. The King's Treasure is deposited in a House placed behind the Palace-Court, and called *Taberick Kali*. The Walls of it are thick, very high, and guarded by a numerous Band of Soldiers. On the South Side of the *Meidan*, a magnificent Mosque was built by *Schah-Abbas the Great*, the first of the Name, and richly adorned by his Successor *Schah-Sephi*. 'Tis consecrated to *Mehedi*, the last of the twelve *Imans* or *Saints*: He was buried near *Kusa*, and is to rise from the Dead, and mount the Horse of *Ali*, to carry the *Koran* to the four Points of the World, that all Mankind may be instructed in and embrace the Law of *Ma-bomet*.

A most  
curious  
Tower.

In a Corner of the *Meidan*, very near the King's Stables, a Tower has been erected, which is the most singular in the whole World. It is intirely made up of the Heads of Stags, Bucks, and Hinds, ranged and cemented with wonderful Art and Strength. King *Thamas* built it. This Prince reigned from 1525 to 1576, and they pretend, that he killed in one only Hunting Match, all the Beasts whose Heads are the Materials of this Tower.

The Trade of *Ispahan* is very considerable, consisting of Silks, rich Stuffs, Camels, Pearls, precious Stones, and other Commodities. The Markets are crowded with *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Georgians*, *Armenians*, and *Jews*. The *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, and *Italians*, drive there also a great Commerce.

This City is esteemed the most learned in the East: It contains thirty-two thousand Houses,

Houses, sixty-two Mosques, forty-eight publick Schools, and eighteen hundred *Carawans* or Inns to receive Strangers ; besides sixty-three publick Bagnios, and twelve Burying-Grounds, or Church-yards. The Inhabitants are partly *Mahometans*, *Jews*, *Christians*, and *Pagans*, to the Number of about twelve hundred thousand Souls, as they pretend : But I am of Opinion, something must be abated ; for Towns in the East are not so well peopled as in *Europe*, their Women not being so fruitful. Be it as it will, there are four Suburbs in *Ispahan* ; the greatest is *Giulpha*, or *Ciolsa*, containing three thousand Houses and twelve Churches: All the Inhabitants of it are *Armenians*, and *Christians* of the *Greek* Communion. Most of them follow Trade, and are suffered to live quietly, upon paying a small Tribute to the King.

The second Suburb, named *Tabris-Abat*, because it is inhabited by People brought thither from *Tauris* by *Schah-Abas*, is situated on the other Side of the River *Senderut*. The third is *Hassen-Abat*, peopled with *Georgian* Christians. The fourth, called *Kebbrabat*, is full of *Pagans*, who pay divine Worship to Fire. The *French* give them the Appellation of *Guebres*, the *Italians* *Gauri*, the *Germans* *Kebbers*.

I have been pretty diffuse in the Description of this City, it being requisite, as I thought, upon Account of its Rank in the *Persian* Empire. I shall be more concise about the others.

The Town of *Caswin*, or *Casbin*, is at Description three Leagues Distance from Mount *Taurus*, tion or in *Caswin*.

in a delightful Plain. It is large, well-built, but without any Fortifications, and contains about one hundred thousand Souls. The Kings of *Persia* made it heretofore the Place of their Residence, and the Palace is still to be seen. *Abas*, surnamed *the Great*, removed the Court to *Ispahan*.

Descrip-  
tion of  
*Casbian*.

*Casbian* is much less than *Caswin*. The Situation of it favours Commerce, which accordingly is carried on there briskly. It lies on the Road from *Caswin* to *Tauris*, at the Foot of a Hill, in a large and beautiful Plain, not far from the *Caspian-Sea*; and all Nations come from the North and East to trade there. The best Manufactories of Silk Stuffs in all *Persia* are carried on in this Town. The King has a Palace in it, as in most of the great Towns of *Persia*. The *Meidan*, before the Palace, is very large, and in the Middle of it is the *Basar*, or the Market.

Of *Sulta-*  
*nia*.

The Situation of *Sultania* is a spacious Plain surrounded with Meadows, which reach as far as Mount *Keider*. Formerly it was a considerable Town, but now it is small and half demolished. It is the cheapest Place to live in in all *Persia*; the Air is healthful, but Mornings and Evenings somewhat cold.

Of *Far-*  
*habad*.

*Ferhabad* is a Town still of a lesser Note than *Sultania*.

Of *Yedz*.

*Yedz*, which is forty long Leagues distant from *Ispahan*, is likewise of no great Consideration, except for the Beauty of the Inhabitants; which occasions a common Proverb amongst the *Persians*, That to lead an agreeable Life, a Man should chuse his Wife from *Yedz*, his Bread from *Yezdecas*, and his Wine from *Schiras*.

Be-

Besides the fore-mentioned Cities, in the Province of *Irack-Agemi*, the Town of *Com* deserves our Notice. It is famous for being the Burying-Place of the Posterity of *Ali*, called by the *Persians* *Iman Zade*, the Children of Saints. Many stately Tombs, wherein those of that Family are interred, adorn it; and it is famous for excellent Scimitar Blades, and all Sorts of Goldsmiths Ware.

The Province of *Ghusistan*, is the same which the Antients called *Susiana*. It was a Kingdom, which after the Death of *Abradis* fell to *Cyrus*. The Gulph of *Balsora* is on the South; the Province of *Fars* on the East; that of *Irack* on the West; and towards the North it borders on a Country called *Ayrack*. The capital Town is *Suza*, in a large Plain by the River *Zomaire*. *Strabo* informs us it was built by *Tithon*, Father of *Memnon*, and *Pliny* says it was repaired by *Darius*. *Alexander the Great* took it, and was married there to *Statira*. Notwithstanding the many Revolutions it has undergone, being sometimes intirely ruined, and then rebuilt, it still makes a considerable Figure amongst the greatest Cities in *Persia*.

The whole Province of *Curdistan* is not subject to the *Persian* Monarch. The *Ottoman Porte* has seized upon Part of it, and the Remainder is governed by *Emirs* who are almost Sovereign Princes: For the Court of *Isfahan* keeps very fair with them, for fear they should embrace the Grand Signior's Party. There are in this Province Christians of various Denominations, as *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, and *Armenians*; *Manicheans* also, who adore God, and honour the Devil, for



fear, say they, he should be angry; and to hinder him from doing them Harm, they stand much in Awe of him: Likewise some *Guebres* of both Sorts, those who adore the Sun, and those who adore Fire: All of them are thought to be the true Posterity of the antient *Persians*.

Reason  
why the  
*Turks* are  
not fond  
of a War  
there.

The *Turks* are not fond of making War in the *Curdistan*, because that Country is full of narrow Places and Hills, constantly guarded by twenty thousand Men, who have settled their Habitation in the Mountains, to stop and oppose any Enemy who should venture to pass.

The best Soldiers in the *Persian* Monarch's Armies, are those whom he draws out of *Curdistan*; they are skilful, active, accustomed to Labour and very stout. The chief Town of this Province, and the strongest Place which the King of *Persia* possesses in the *Curdistan*, is *Hamadan*, on the Borders of *Irack-Agemi*, and by consequence proves to be the Key of the Kingdom on the North and the East Sides.

*Loristan*.

Nothing can be said in Commendation of the Province called *Loristan*.

*Fars*.

The Country of *Fars*, or the *Faristan*, was famous heretofore, under the Denomination of *Perfis* or *Persia*; and is still considerable upon Account of its Fertility and Commerce: It lies towards the *Persian* Gulph. The chief Towns in it are *Schiras*, *Darabgierd*, and *Combrou*.

City of  
*Schiras*.

*Schiras*, one of the largest Cities of *Persia*, is built in a delightful Plain, thick set with Woods of Palm and *Cyprus* Trees: The Extent of this charming Plain is twenty Leagues from

from North to South, and as much from East to West. The River *Bendemir* runs thro' the Middle of it, and washes the Walls of *Schiras*, which they pretend is the antient *Persepolis*, and that its Ruins are still to be seen.

It is reported that *Mahomet* did not love to visit this Town, because he found there a Satisfaction of all his Senses too alluring. And, in reality, nothing can be more agreeable to the Sight, than the various Objects which this Country presents to the View of Travellers. The Smell is delighted by the Alleys of Orange-Trees with which their Gardens abound. The Taste is feasted by the juicy Flavour of the Meat, their wild and tame Fowl. Their Wines are excellent and much esteemed. As to the rest, which this pretended Lawgiver valued most; the Women of *Schiras* were very likely to give him all the Satisfaction he could desire. They are exceeding beautiful, much addicted to Gallantry, and dainty Morsels for a false Prophet. It is believed *Schiras* was the Place of Residence of the *Magi*, who travelled to *Judæa* in order to pay their Homages to our Saviour. This Town contains about ten thousand Houses. There is a College in which the *Mahometan* Divinity, Philosophy, and Physick are taught. The Number of Students is computed at six hundred.

*Darabgierd* is a Town of less Note than *Darabgi-Schiras*; it has no particular Recommendation, except its Name, which shews that it was built by *Darius*.

*Combrou* is a fortified Town, with a safe Harbour. They also call it *Bender-Abas*,

Reason  
why *Ma-  
homet* lov-  
ed not to  
come to it.

*Combrou.*



that is the Haven of *Abas*, because this Prince repaired it. The *Portugueze* had seized upon it, and maintained that Post till the Reign of *Schah Abas the Great*, who drove them out. The Town is large, very populous, and tolerably well built. 'Tis defended by a Castle, which protects also the Haven.

*Laristan.*

The Country of *Lar* is the sixth Province of *Persia*, was heretofore a Kingdom governed by its own Monarch, till *Abas* the First conquered it in the Beginning of the seventeenth Century, after defeating the *Guebres*, and putting to the Sword their King and all his Family. This is a barren Country; the Ground so sandy, that nothing can be sown in it; the Heat excessive, and, to complete their Misery, they have no Water, except in some Cisterns dug by the Inhabitants, which are filled by the Rain: But the violent Heat soon turns it to Filth and Stink. The chief Towns are *Lar* and *Passagarda*.

*Lar.*

The Town of *Lar* gives its Name to the Province, and is an agreeable Place: Every House has a Turret, much higher than our Chimney Stacks, hollow within, and open at the Top, to give a Passage to the Wind, that it may fan and refresh the House, which is very useful in those hot Climates; besides the fine Prospect it affords. Here stands its only Defence, an ill-fortified Castle, in which are many Cannons brought from *Ormus*.

*Passagarda.*

*Passagarda*, or *Passa*, is the head Town of a small Country, which is part of, and enclosed within the Limits of the *Laristan*.  
The

The great *Cyrus* is buried here, if Credit is to be given to *Pliny* and *Quintus Curtius*. This little District is full of *Cypres-trees*, one of which is very remarkable, both on account of its prodigious Height, and by reason of its Circumference, which is equally amazing, since five Men of the tallest Size cannot enclose its Body with their Arms extended at full Length. A red Gum, taken for Blood by the Unlearned, distils from this Tree, which is highly respected by the *Persians*. They call it *Pir*, which in their Language, signifies *old*. The *Arabians* give it the Name of *Sceich*.

The Province of *Kirman* is very large, *Kirman*. borders on one Side upon *Faristan*, and on the other, upon *Zablustan* and the *Indian-Sea*. The chief Town is also called *Kirman*.

The Province of *Zablustan* lies South of *Zablustan*. the Kingdom of *Chorasan*, and North of *Kirman*. The chief Towns are *Zarans*, *Bust*, and *Nebesact*, besides a Fort which is esteemed the strongest in all *Persia*.

*Sigistan* or *Drangiana* is neither much *Sigistan*. known, nor worth much Notice. There are but two tolerable Towns in it, *Ariaspe* and *Praphtasia*.

The Kingdom of *Mazanderan*, is the *Mazanderan*. tenth Province of *Persia*, and of a great Extent. The Antients called it *Hircania*. It borders on the *Caspian-Sea*. The Air is unwholesome in this Country, by reason of the numerous hollow Places and Marshes; the Standing-waters of which breed in Winter an infinite Quantity of venomous Insects. These hollow Places and Marshes being dri-

ed up by the Heat of Summer, the Insects burſt, infect the Air, and cauſe Epidemical Diſtempers. Nevertheleſs this Country produces ſeveral Sorts of Fruits; not much Wheat, but, to make amends, much Rice, on which the Inhabitants live. The Women are very handſome and ſociable, wear no Veils on their Faces, as all other *Mahometan* Women do; are extremely polite and gracious; and in general all the People of *Mazanderan* are very humane. Hoſpitality is no where ſo well known and practiſed. All Strangers are welcome without Diſtinction; lodged and entertained according to the beſt of their Power. Inns, we may conclude, are not neceſſary in a Country ſo hoſpitable; and in effect, there are none; and in the whole Kingdom of *Mazanderan* it is impoſſible to find one Carawanſera. The moſt noted Towns are *Grand-Ferhabad*, *Eſcres*, and *Saru*.

*Ferhabad.*

*Ferhabad* is without Diſpute the largeſt City in *Persia*: It is built on a ſpacious Plain near the *Caspian-Sea*. *Schah-Abas the Great* laid the firſt Foundation of it, towards the End of the ſixteenth Century; yet it is ſo wonderfully increaſed, that at this Time it contains forty Thouſand Houſes. The ſaid Monarch gave it the Name of *Ferhabad*, made up of the two *Persian* Words, *Ferb*, that is Joy, and *Abad*, which ſignifies *Habitation*, *Dwelling*. The true Reaſon which prevailed on *Schah-Abas* to raiſe this City, was, becauſe his Mother was a Native of *Mazanderan*; and in order to perpetuate the Memory of his Origin, he undertook to erect in this Province a Town which

which should exceed in Bigness all others in the World. Politicians pretend that he was excited to it by Reasons of State, intending to make *Ferhabad* an impregnable Place of Arms, by its inaccessible Situation : For the only Ways of approaching to it are either the *Caspian-Sea*, hitherto thought unnavigable, or Mountains and narrow, dangerous, difficult Passes. So that a small Garrison may guard the Town ; and some thousand Men placed in the Streights, put it out of all Danger of an Attack. This Conjecture is not ill grounded, considering the Number of Enemies with whom *Schah-Abas* was surrounded, and the many Wars he was obliged to maintain. This Monarch did also intend to build some other great Towns in *Mazanderan* : But knowing that the Number of Subjects strengthens a State, and being resolved to make this Province the most flourishing in his Empire ; he gave an Invitation to Strangers of all Religions, granted them Privileges, freed Slaves, who settled there, and made them enjoy the Immunities of Freemen. No Country in the World is so well stocked with Mulberry-trees as *Mazanderan*, which accordingly breeds a prodigious Number of Silk-worms. The Circumference of *Ferhabad* equals, or even exceeds that of *Constantinople* ; but the Houses of the former are low, and not above a Story high. The *Meidan* and *Basar* are very fine. As to the King's Palace, it is esteemed one of the most magnificent in the whole Kingdom.

*Schah Abas* is also the Founder of the *Esfref*. Town of *Esfref*, distant six Leagues from *Ferhabad*, and one League from the Sea, in

a Plain surrounded with delightful Hills. *Ferhabad* is by much larger and more regular, but then the Neighbourhood of *Escref* abounds in Wild-fowl and Fallow-deer, and the Court often visits it to take the Diversion of Hunting.

*Saru.* *Saru* is very large and populous. That Word in the *Persian* Tongue signifies yellow; and the prodigious Number of Lemons and Oranges, which grow hereabouts, are supposed to be the Occasion of the Town's bearing that Name.

*Kilan.* The Province of *Kilan*, one of the most considerable in *Persia*, is surrounded by Mountains, from whence several Rivers flow, water the Champaign Country, and make it fruitful. Oil, Lemons, Oranges, and Tobacco, grow there in Abundance; but its principal Commodities are Wine, Rice, and Silk.

*Scamachia.* *Scamachia*, the most remarkable City in this Country, stands in a Valley somewhat confined, which occasions it to extend much farther in Length than in Breadth. The Streets are strait and very long. There is a handsome Bazar, or Market, where all Sorts of Silk and Cotton Goods are sold. The *Russian* Merchants carry on a great Trade here with Pewter, Lead, and Copper, which they exchange for Silks and Perfumes.

*Amurath III.* took this City in 1578: But the *Persians* retook and burned it the same Year, after having won a great Victory over the *Turks*. It was rebuilt soon after, and destroy'd again by an Earthquake in 1667.

Being repaired in 1670, and put into good Condition, it began to recover the Losses it had



had sustained, when the rebellious *Tartars* of *Daghestan* surpris'd and plundered it, which ruined all the *Russian* Merchants, and gave the Czar *Peter the Great* a Pretence for marching against those People, and making an Irruption into *Persia*.

*Tabristan* is one of the smallest Provinces *Tabristan*. in *Persia*. Its Capital is *Afferabat*.

*Adirbeizan*, on the contrary, is one of *Adirbei-* the largest Provinces of this extensive Em-  
pire, being the *Media* of the Antients. Its principal Cities are *Tauris*, *Erivan*, and *Ardabil*, or *Ardewil*.

*Tauris*, or, as the *Persians* pronounce it, *Tauris*. *Tabris*, one of the finest and richest Cities of *Persia*, is situated in a Plain, at the Foot of a Mountain, which is thought to be the Antient *Orontes*. It has neither Moat nor Ramparts, but only a sorry half-ruined Wall. The little River *Spingtcha*, which runs thro' this City, often does great Damages by its Inundations. There is another River besides at *Tauris*, called *Ali*, which washes the Walls on the North Side of the Town. Here are reckoned about 15,000 Houses, among which the Capuchins have a Convent, much more commodious than what they enjoy at *Ispahan*. They built it by Permission of *Mirza-Ibrahim* the Governor. A Cannon Shot South of *Tauris*, are the Ruins of an old Castle, which the *Armenians* pretend was the Residence of *Cosroes*. A great many Houses here, which had run to ruin, were repaired about seventeen Years ago, when the Governor causing a Computation to be taken of the Inhabitants, Travellers assure us they amounted to 500,000.

*Tauris*

*Tauris* is famous in *Persia* for the beautiful Turbans that are made there, and for the finest Shagreen Skins. The Winters are cold here, on account of the Situation, which is in the North of *Persia*, and near a high Mountain, whose Top is covered with Snow a great Part of the Year. But the Air, in return, is very healthful. This City has severely felt the Misfortunes of War. *Soliman* took it in 1514, and taking with him the richest of the Inhabitants, returned to *Constantinople*: But scarce was he arrived there, before the People of *Tauris* rose against the Troops he had left among them, and put them to the Sword. The *Persian* Army, which lay encamped in the Neighbourhood, and had a good Intelligence with the Citizens, coming in opportunely to their Support, recovered them to the Obedience of the Kings of *Persia*, leaving *Soliman* no Possibility of being revenged on them. His Son *Soliman II.* sent an Army thither under *Ibrahim-Bassa* his Vizir, who took it after a long and violent Attack; and in order to secure his Conquest, built a Citadel, which he mounted with 350 Pieces of Cannon. This, however, did not awe the Inhabitants from revolting afresh, and massacring the whole *Turkish* Garrison, which consisted only of 1800 Men. *Ibrahim Bassa* marched once more against them, took the City by Assault, and severely chastised the Inhabitants, cruelly impaling a great Number of them, and leaving 10,000 *Janissaries* to keep the rest in Subjection. Some Years after, under the Reign of *Amurath III.* these People rebelled again, and, with the Assistance of a few  
Per-



*Persian* Troops, cut the Throats of the *Turkish* Soldiers. This Action irritating the Sultan, he sent hither a formidable Army in 1585, under *Osman-Bassa* his Grand Vizir, who retook the City, and abandoned it to Plunder. *Schah-Abas the Great*, in 1603, bravely recovered it from the *Turks*. It suffered much by an Earthquake in 1721: And in the last War between *Persia* and *Turkey*, it was alternately sacked by the Troops on both Sides.

*Eriwan* belongs rather to *Armenia* than to *Adirbeitzan*, tho' it is usually numbered among the Cities of the latter Province. The Plain it stands in is environed by a Circle of Mountains, and watered by *Sanguieya* and *Querck-Boulack*, two Rivers which issue from them. Upon the first of these is a Bridge of three Arches, in which there are pleasant Apartments, contrived for the Diversion of the Kan or Governor during the hot Weather. Just by *Eriwan*, stands a Citadel, which for the Number of its Inhabitants, and the Commerce there carried on, might rather pass for a Town. All the Shop-keepers are either *Armenians* or *Persians*, and the Governor is obliged to send Advice to the Court of *Ispahan* of all the Caravans that pass this way; and when any foreign Ambassador comes by, he must order an Escort with him to the next Place where there is a Governor. The great Length of the Winter at *Eriwan* is perhaps the Cause of the Purity of its Air, which is very healthful. The Lands about it are full of Vineyards, which produce a Wine that is highly esteemed by good Judges.

The

Where  
Noah  
planted  
the Vine,  
according  
to the *Ar-*  
*menians*.

The *Armenians* have a Tradition, that *Noah* planted the first Vine in the Neighbourhood of *Erivan*, and, if you believe them, they point out the very Spot at this Day. They also shew you an old Stem, which they pretend was this original Plant. Pity that *Noah* is not in the Number of modern Saints, that this dry Stump might have the Honour of working its Share of Miracles!

In 1582 the *Turks* became Masters of *Erivan*, and built the Citadel above-mentioned, to keep the Inhabitants in Subjection. The *Persians* retook both from the *Turks* in 1604, and fortified the Citadel with several new Works, badly executed.

In 1615 the *Turks* attacked it again, *Schah-Abas* being then King of *Persia*. After a Siege of four Months, the *Ottoman Army*, one third diminished, was obliged to retire, without being able to gain an Inch upon the Besieged. But the *Turks* returning again after the Death of *Abas*, got once more Possession of *Erivan*; which however *Schah-Sepbi*, Grandson of *Schah-Abas*, recover'd in 1635. Since that, this City has never been besieged; only the Territory round it suffered a little in the last War, sometimes from the *Turks*, and sometimes from the *Persians*.

The *Fresh-*  
*water Sea*.

Three Days Journey from *Erivan* is a little Sea or Lake, thirty Leagues in Circuit, which bears the Name of the *Fresh-water Sea*. In the Midst of it is an Isle, where stands a Cloister, the Prior of which has the Title of Patriarch.

*Ardebil*.

*Ardebil* is a City moderately large, almost every House of which has a Garden planted with

with Fruit-trees, which forms at a Distance a beautiful Prospect, and makes it look like a City in the midst of a Forest. It was formerly the Burying-place of the *Persian* Kings, before they chose the City of *Com* for that Purpose. Several magnificent Monuments are yet to be seen at *Ardebil*, where some of those Monarchs lie interr'd.

The Province of *Schirwan* stretches along *Schirwan*. the Western Coasts of the *Caspian Sea*, between *Georgia* and the *Daghestan Tartars*. It is one of the most rich and fertile Countries of all *Persia*, but the Inhabitants have the Character of being a slothful People.

*Derbent*, the most considerable City of *Derbent*. *Schirwan*, is so named from its long and narrow Figure. The *Turks* call it *Temir-Capi*, or the *Iron-Porte*. It stands upon the *Caspian-Sea*, at a small Distance from Mount *Caucasus*, by which all Travellers are obliged to pass in their Way between *Russia* and *Persia*. The Place they pass thro' is called the *Caspian-Porte*, or the Port of *Caucasus*. *Derbent*, as well as the Province it stands in, has been in the Hands of the *Russians* since the Year 1722.

*Albania* takes its Name from its Capital, *Albania*. antiently *Albana*, tho' more known at present by the Name of *Baku*. That, as well as *Derbent*, is situated on the *Caspian-Sea*; for which Reason it is that in many modern Maps, this Sea is denominated *The Sea of Baku*. There is a Fountain near *Baku* that runs with black Oil, which the *Persians* make use of to burn in their Lamps.

*Magbostan* extends towards the *Persian Magbostan*, *Gulph*, and being in a hot Climate, the Inhabitants

Where  
*Noah*  
planted  
the Vine,  
according  
to the *Ar-*  
*menians*.

The *Armenians* have a Tradition, that *Noah* planted the first Vine in the Neighbourhood of *Eriuan*, and, if you believe them, they point out the very Spot at this Day. They also shew you an old Stem, which they pretend was this original Plant. Pity that *Noah* is not in the Number of modern Saints, that this dry Stump might have the Honour of working its Share of Miracles !

In 1582 the *Turks* became Masters of *Eriuan*, and built the Citadel above-mentioned, to keep the Inhabitants in Subjection. The *Persians* retook both from the *Turks* in 1604, and fortified the Citadel with several new Works, badly executed.

In 1615 the *Turks* attacked it again, *Schah-Abas* being then King of *Persia*. After a Siege of four Months, the *Ottoman* Army, one third diminished, was obliged to retire, without being able to gain an Inch upon the Besieged. But the *Turks* returning again after the Death of *Abas*, got once more Possession of *Eriuan*; which however *Schah-Sepbi*, Grandson of *Schah-Abas*, recover'd in 1635. Since that, this City has never been besieged ; only the Territory round it suffered a little in the last War, sometimes from the *Turks*, and sometimes from the *Persians*.

The *Fresh-*  
*water Sea*.

Three Days Journey from *Eriuan* is a little Sea or Lake, thirty Leagues in Circuit, which bears the Name of the *Fresh-water Sea*. In the Midst of it is an Isle, where stands a Cloister, the Prior of which has the Title of Patriarch.

*Ardebil*.

*Ardebil* is a City moderately large, almost every House of which has a Garden planted with

with Fruit-trees, which forms at a Distance a beautiful Prospect, and makes it look like a City in the midst of a Forest. It was formerly the Burying-place of the *Persian* Kings, before they chose the City of *Com* for that Purpose. Several magnificent Monuments are yet to be seen at *Ardebil*, where some of those Monarchs lie interr'd.

The Province of *Schirwan* stretches along *Schirwan*, the Western Coasts of the *Caspian Sea*, between *Georgia* and the *Daghestan Tartars*. It is one of the most rich and fertile Countries of all *Persia*, but the Inhabitants have the Character of being a slothful People.

*Derbent*, the most considerable City of *Derbent*. *Schirwan*, is so named from its long and narrow Figure. The *Turks* call it *Temir-Capi*, or the *Iron-Porte*. It stands upon the *Caspian-Sea*, at a small Distance from Mount *Caucasus*, by which all Travellers are obliged to pass in their Way between *Russia* and *Persia*. The Place they pass thro' is called the *Caspian-Porte*, or the Port of *Caucasus*. *Derbent*, as well as the Province it stands in, has been in the Hands of the *Russians* since the Year 1722.

*Albania* takes its Name from its Capital, *Albania*. antiently *Albana*, tho' more known at present by the Name of *Baku*. That, as well as *Derbent*, is situated on the *Caspian-Sea*; for which Reason it is that in many modern Maps, this Sea is denominated *The Sea of Baku*. There is a Fountain near *Baku* that runs with black Oil, which the *Persians* make use of to burn in their Lamps.

*Maghestan* extends towards the *Persian Maghestan*, *Gulph*, and being in a hot Climate, the In-

D

habitants



habitants go almost naked. They are of a swarthy Complexion; notwithstanding which, their Women are none of the most ordinary.

*Mina.*

*Mina*, a double Fortrefs, is the most considerable Place in this Province. The larger Fortification incloses a great many Houses and Shops; and within it, in one Corner, stands the lesser, which is indeed very small, only a sort of Castle defended by a Garrison, and commanded by a *Beig*. These two Fortresses are strengthen'd with good Ramparts, and a Ditch fed with Water from a little River that runs just by.

*Chorasan.*

The Province or Kingdom of *Chorasan* is the antient *Bactriana*, the Seat of the *Parthians*. It lies on the Side of *Zagathai*, and touches on several Districts of *Great Tartary*. Among many considerable Cities that it contains, the chief are *Herat*, *Nisabur*, *Sarachas*, *Turfchine*, and *Merverud*. *Schah-Abas the Great* was Governor of *Herat* before his Father's Death, when he was only Prince-Royal. One of the Sons of *Kouli-Kan* is at present invested with the same Office, which makes me think that this Place must be of great Importance.

*Candabar.*

The Kingdom of *Candabar* borders upon the Mogul's Dominions. The *Aghwans*, who make the greatest Part of its Inhabitants, are more slothful than the *Arabians*, and not behind them in the Art of Thieving: They set upon the Caravans between *India* and *Persia*, and when they master them, not only rob the Merchants of their Effects, but massacre the Passengers, or sell them for Slaves to the *Tartars*.

*Can-*

*Candahar*, the Capital of this Country, to which it communicates its Name, is a large City, and one of the best fortified in all the East. *Schah-Abas the Great* took it in 1622 from the Mogul Emperor, who afterwards retook it, and again lost it to the *Persian* Monarch, whose Successors have been in Possession of it ever since.

The Province of *Hazaray* is Part of the *Hazaray*. Kingdom of *Candahar*, but subject to a Governor of its own, who holds immediately of the Court of *Ispahan*.

The Country of *Zend*, bordering also on *Zend*. the Mogul, has the Title of Kingdom. It is governed by several Sultans, who are hereditary Princes, but Vassals of the King of *Persia*.

*Daghestan*, inhabited by *Tartars*, is a Province above 50 Leagues in Length. The *Caspian Sea* bounds it on the East, Mount *Caucasus* on the West, *Circassia* on the North, and *Schirwan* on the South. *Daghestan*

The *Tartars* of *Daghestan* are governed by Sultans, or particular Princes, who, tho' Vassals of the *Persian* Monarch, frequently laugh at his Orders, when they find them not agreeable to their Interests, or their Inclinations. These People are the greatest Thieves in the World; they prey indifferently on Friend and Enemy, and the *Persians* themselves are not secure from their Depredations. But the *Russians* lately made them pay somewhat dear for the Outrages they had committed in their Territory. The greatest Part of these *Tartars* dwell only in Tents, without any fix'd Habitation: Yet there are a few Towns and Villages in *Daghestan*,  
D 2

*hestan*, and one City of about 1000 Houses, called *Tarku*, and built upon a Mountain environed with Rocks, from whence issue several Fountains.

*Georgia.*

*Georgia* is a vast extensive Country, bordering upon *Daghestan* and *Circassia* towards the North, upon *Turcomania* and *Adirbeitzan* towards the South, towards the East upon *Schirwan*, and towards the West upon the *Black Sea*. It is usually divided into two Parts, one under the Dominion of *Persia*, the other under the Dominion of the *Turks*, and usually called *Mingrelia*. The *Persians* also distinguish their Part by the Name of *Gurgistan*: It is governed by two Princes, who formerly had the Name of Kings, but have lost that fine Title since they became Vassals to the King of *Persia*. At present they are only called *Kans* or *Chans*, which signifies *Governors*. The *Georgians*, in general, are Christians: Their Nobility tyrannise cruelly over the Peasants, which occasions many of them daily to embrace *Mahometism*, to free themselves from the Drudgery they are otherwise exposed to. Numbers of Nobility here pretend they are born Princes, and the greatest Part of these turn *Mahometans*, in hopes of preserving their Title, and augmenting their Patrimony.

The Country is intersected with Mountains and Valleys, and produces all Sorts of Commodities. The Wine is excellent, and a great Trade is driven in it to *Persia* and *Armenia*. A Ton of the best may be bought in *Georgia* for eight Imperial Florins, or about six *French* Crowns. The *Georgians* are excellent Archers, and a great Part of the  
*Persian*

*Persian* Cavalry is composed of that Nation ; the Kings of *Persia* putting great Confidence in their Bravery and Fidelity ; neither the one nor the other of which they ever wanted, whether in the Armies of *Persia* or the Mogul : For when these two Powers are at War, they serve under both with equal Fidelity. What happens to the *Swiss* in *Europe*, often befalls the *Georgians* in *Asia* ; I mean, to fight against one another under two Powers at Variance.

The *Georgians* in general are hard Drink- Character  
ers, and notorious Thieves. As Children in of the  
other Countries are taught the Love of Vir- *Georgians*.  
tue, they are here instructed in the Art of  
Stealing. The Women are beautiful. Justice is administer'd by Christian Magistrates, and no other Money but that of *Persia* is current in all *Gurgistan*.

*Teflis*, called by the Natives *Cala*, is the *Teflis*.  
Capital of *Gurgistan*, or *Persian Georgia*. It stands upon a Mountain, by the Banks of the River *Kur*, or *Cyrus* ; is environed with strong Ramparts, and has a good Citadel, which the *Turks* built there in 1576. Here the Chief of the *Georgian* Princes has his Residence, as Head Governor of the Province. The free Profession of all Religions is tolerated in *Teflis*, and the *Georgians* have there divers Churches, the Metropolitan of which is *Sion*. That of *Aguescat* is remarkable for the pretended Image which *Jesus Christ* sent to *Agbarus*, who desired to see him ; according to the wretched Author of a pious Romance, who craftily invented this Fable, which the Monks now defend with more Warmth than good Sense. The *Mahome-*

*tans* have no Mosque in the City, but only one in the Citadel. Tho' they have often attempted to build one in the Town, the People have always effectually opposed it; and there was once a Skirmish on this Account, in which a *Mahometan* Priest was knocked on the Head. As to the rest, the *Georgians* have a very little Christianity, mixed with much Superstition and false Devotion: They neglect the solid Morality of the Gospel, and are Bigots in mere Trifles: Images and Relicks they contend warmly for, and rely much on Saints and the blessed Virgin, but little on *Jesus Christ*.

The *Armenians* have also several Churches at *Teflis*, the most considerable of which is called *Pacha-vane*, or the *Bassa's Cloister*, because it was built by a *Bassa* who embraced Christianity.

The other Cities of *Persian Georgia* are *Gory*, *Suram*, and *Aly*.

*Gory*.

*Gory* is situated in a Plain, between two Mountains, upon the Banks of the *Kur*. Near the River are two high Hills, upon the Top of one of which is a Citadel, built in 1670, by the Care of *Rustan Kan*, who commanded the *Persian* Army during the War then carrying on in *Georgia*. The Situation of this Place is so advantageous, that it is garisoned with only 200 Men, all native *Persians*. A Plan of it was brought into *Europe* by a Monk of *St. Austin*, who was upon the Spot at the Time it was finished.

*Armenia*, as well as *Georgia*, is divided between the Grand Signior and the King of *Persia*. That Part of it which is under the latter



latter is subdivided into four Provinces, called *Rivan*, *Kunge*, *Nachgivan*, and *Alingia*. The Christian Religion is here every where predominant, and the *Armenian* Priests say Mass in the *Greek* Tongue; as the few Catholics among them do in the *Latin*. The first of these have their Patriarchs, and the Pope sends an Archbishop to the latter; at which the Court of *Ispahan* artfully connives, as well knowing it has nothing to fear from the papal Power, whose Soldiers are none of the bravest, and whose Fund for War consists only in Indulgences.

The Isle of *Ormuz* is situated in the *Persian* Gulph, opposite the Mouth of the River *Drut*. It may be about 15 Leagues in Circumference, and is reckoned about an equal Distance from the Continent of *Persia*. The Heat is so excessive in this Isle, that Man and Beast often die of it. The Ground is dry and barren; Water scarce, and the little there is, salt. Here are Mountains of Salt frightful to look at, which sufficiently testify the Infertility of the Soil. Most of the Inhabitants have contrived subterraneous Caves, in which they keep large Vessels full of Sea Water for their Refreshment: And during the Dog-days, these poor Wretches stand a good Part of the Day in their Tuns, up to the Neck in Water, to avoid the Effects of the Heat.

There is one Thing particular in the Isle of *Ormuz*, which can be met with no where else. It is a Sort of Wood so ponderous, that if you lay it on the Surface of the Water, it sinks with its own Weight, like Lead or Iron. On the contrary, there is a Kind of Wood and Stone of a singular Quality.

Kind of Pumice-Stone that will not dip under Water, though you throw it ever so hard, but swims at top like a Piece of Cork.

Some pretend that *Mercury* established a Colony in the Isle of *Ormus*, which at best can be only a probable Opinion. Thus much however is certain, that a *Mahometan* Prince reigned there in the sixteenth Century, and that the Island had then the Title of a Kingdom. This Prince, or petty King, built a City in 1507, which the *Portuguese* got Possession of soon after, under the Conduct of the Duke d' *Alberquerque*. They built a beautiful and strong Citadel near its Walls, in which they put a good Garrison, well supplied with Magazines, and a more numerous Artillery than was usually seen at that Time. This Fort was a long while taken for impregnable, which set the *Portuguese* upon embellishing the City of *Ormus*; and they succeeded in it to a Miracle. The Streets were all laid out by Line, and Palaces arose where Cottages were before. Crowds of Merchants came to settle there, and found their Account in it so well, that all the East rang with the Fame of their Riches. Some among them were worth more than two Millions, in ready Money and Effects.

The finest Edifice which the *Portuguese* built at *Ormus*, next to the Citadel, was the *Hospital of Mercy*, where the sick Poor were well looked after. Upon the Coming of these Guests, the King of *Ormus* turned Christian, and acknowledged himself a Vassal of the King of *Portugal*. Mean while, they suffered him to live upon his little Revenue without Molestation, and please himself with the

the Shadow of Royalty. His Subjects also were baptized, and the *Portuguese* assumed to themselves the Mastery in this small Island, upon the Strength of their supposed inexpugnable Castle.

*Schah-Abas the Great* had a different Opinion of this Fort, from which he was desirous of driving these *Portuguese*: But a maritime Force was wanting for that Purpose, of which the Kings of *Persia* were wholly destitute. The *English*, animated by a Jealousy which is common to Rivals in Trade, removed this Difficulty by offering to assist him with their Fleet, provided his Majesty would cede to them for ever after one Moiety of the Revenues arising from the Customs paid by Ships in the *Persian* Gulph. This Proposition accepted, *Ormus* was besieged by Sea and Land. The *Portuguese* in their Citadel defended themselves like Lions, and the Siege was long and bloody. The *Persian* Artillery reduced the City into a Heap of Rubbish, and the *English* threw so many Bombs into the Citadel, that at length it came to the Ground. On the 25th of *April* 1622, the *Portuguese* were obliged to surrender, their Fleet not having been able to bring them Succour. The Booty, consisting of twelve Millions of ready Money, and a World of rich Effects, was divided between the *English* and the *Persians*; but the latter had all the Artillery, no less than 365 Pieces of different Bores, most of them Brass. The Isles of *Kesem* and *Lareck*, which lie at a little Distance from *Ormus*, were also evacuated by the *Portuguese* who had there settled. In a Word, the *Persians* have always faithfully observed their Treaty with

with the *English*, and the *Indian* Company of *London*, which paid the Expence of this Armament, has received 40,000 *l.* Sterling for its Part of the Customs. During the last Troubles in *Persia* indeed, the Court of *Is-pahan* deliberated whether it should keep so disadvantageous a Treaty any longer; but having no naval Force, it did not think convenient to quarrel with the *English*, chusing rather to continue to divide with them the Customs of the *Persian* Gulph, than to expose any of their maritime Towns to a Bombardment, and their Commerce to Ruin.

Religion  
of the  
*Persians*.

There are several Religions in *Persia*, of each of which I shall say a Word or two. *Mahometism*, the prevailing one, is so well known, that it would be superfluous to enlarge on it: But as every one is not acquainted with the Subject of that mortal Hatred which subsists between the *Turks* and the *Persians*, who are otherwise of the same Faith, it will not be amiss to give a short Explanation of it.

Their Di-  
visions  
with the  
*Turks*.

When *Mahomet* published his *Koran*, and, Sword in Hand, compelled Mankind to receive it, he had with him one *Ali*, his Brother by the Father's Side, and three other Arch-Deceivers, namely *Abubecker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*. After the Death of the false Prophet, these four Persons severally laid Claim to the Succession. *Ali*, though the youngest of the four, thought he had the strongest Right, because of his Relation to the Deceased; besides that *Mahomet*, upon his Death-bed, seemed to have pointed him out. However, the others supplanted him. Happy for *Ali*, they lived not long, so that he

he was soon delivered from these troublesome Competitors: And the *Persians* afterwards so accustomed themselves to consider him as the next great Prophet after the Impostor *Mahomet*, that they are ever in Dispute, even to this Day, with the *Turks* upon this Subject.

The *Turks* cannot bear to hear *Ali* called the greatest Saint after *Mahomet*, because he did not succeed him immediately: They pretend that this Honour is due only to *Abubecker*, and after him to *Omar* and *Osman*; and as for *Ali*, they have always regarded him as the last of the Prophets of *Mahometism*. This is the whole Source of that Division and Rancour between the *Persians* and *Turks*: The former cannot hear the Names of *Abubecker*, *Omar*, and *Osman* without being in a Rage; and the latter never pronounce that of *Ali* but with Indignation, looking on him as a Usurper of the Glory of the other three.

If we consider the Matter well, we shall find Reflection. there is no Religion without such like Divisions. One may say that Mankind, ever the Dupes of the Avarice of their Priests, the Opinions of their Doctors, and the Politicks of their Sovereigns, though formed by Nature to live in Society, are always ready to murder one another; as if a different Manner of Thinking upon abstracted Subjects, had any Relation to Union of Heart in the Commerce of Life.

When the Kings of *Persia* are at War against the *Turks*, they never fail to signify to their Soldiers, that they are going to fight against the Enemies of the Name of *Ali*, and to promise them the Recompence due

Politicks  
of the  
Kings of  
*Persia*.



to Martyrdom. The *Mahometan* Priests of the Sect of *Ali* perform their Business excellently well on these Occasions; and those of the Sect of *Omar* are not behind-hand among the *Turks*. All their Labours on both Sides tend to promote a more plentiful Effusion of Blood; for both Sides are persuaded, that the more Enemies they butcher, the more acceptable they render themselves in the Eye of God, and of *Mahomet* his pretended Prophet.

Reflection. Madmen, doubtless, as well *Turks* as *Persians*! But were the *French* less so, when, abused by their Priests and Monks at the Time of the League, they let loose their Fury upon their Countrymen, and spilt even the Blood of their nearest Relations? And all this for what? Because some of them chose to pray to the Almighty in *French*, and others in *Latin*. These Inconveniencies happen in all Religions, where Hypocrisy will still be confounded with real Virtue. The *Mahometans* have their Monks and Priests, who among them, as well as elsewhere, are a Pack of lazy Fellows, that seek only their own Interest, without regard to the publick Welfare. Their whole Attention is to preserve the fat Revenues which they hold from Ignorance and Superstition, and he merits the Flames that lays his Fingers on these. But to imagine that they concern themselves much about Religion, is a palpable Error. The greatest Part of them have none; and why then should they trouble themselves about it? But this by the Way only.

I have remarked that the Primacy of *Ali* Other was the Source of this mutual Hatred. But Sources of this must not be thought the only Subject of the *Persians* Enmity against the *Turks*. their Divisions, since there are others of no less Importance. For Example, the *Turks* hold that a true Believer ought to wear a round Turban, and the *Persians* maintain it should be piked. The *Turks* will have Green to be the holy Colour, and no Man amongst them is allowed to wear it but those of the Race of *Mahomet*; whereas the *Persians* wear this Colour in common. The first say that Wine is absolutely forbidden in the *Koran*, and the others insist that the Prohibition is not in clear and distinct Terms.

Would you not say, that you heard the Reflection Constitutionists sustain the Pope is infallible, and the *Jansenists* assert he is not? Those, that Grace is not efficacious without the Controul of the Will; These, that it is so of itself, or that it operates its Effect without such Assistance? Seems it not like the *Cordeliers* employing all their Subtlety to prove that the Virgin *Mary* was born without Sin, and the *Thomists* as strenuously maintaining the contrary? The Differences between the Protestants and the *Roman Catholics* are a little more considerable: But what Man of Sense will dare say they are sufficient to have authorised such an Action as the bloody Day of St. *Bartholomew*, much less all the Evils that have followed the Revocation of the Edict of *Nantes*?

*Tantum Religio potuit suadere malorum.\**

\* *Lucret. Lib. iii.*

E

There

Senti-  
ments of  
the *Sciates*  
upon Mar-  
riage, and  
with what  
Eye they  
look on  
the fair  
Sex.

The *Per-  
sians* lay  
no Re-  
straint on  
Con-  
science.

There are an infinite Number of other little Sects, besides the two great ones of *Ali* and *Osman*, which divide the *Mahometan* Religion. The Leaders of them dispute about Words, like our Scholiasts. I will not undertake to speak of all these Sects in particular, which would fill a Volume much larger than I am inclined to make this: But I cannot help observing, that the most diverting of them all is that of the *Sciates*. They differ from your strict *Mahometans* in believing that all Children are legitimate, and treat Marriage as a Chimera. They take a Woman they like, keep her as long as they please, and turn her off with a little Sum of Money. If any one afterwards fancies this Woman, he is welcome to take her; no body will hinder him. The *Sciates* are none of your gallant Lovers; they look upon Women as Beasts of Burthen, which a Man may use when he has Occasion,† and send them packing as soon as he has done. To talk of Constancy, Fidelity, Conjugal Love to a *Sciata*, is talking a Language he laughs at, and does not understand!

The *Persians*, throughout their Empire, permit the free Profession of every Sect of Christianity: More reasonable in this, and more humane than some Christians themselves,

† Pardon me, ye Fair, if I am obliged to report the Sentiments of these Barbarians concerning your Sex. I can assure you, it shall not in the least diminish my Respect and Admiration for your amiable Qualities. Peste on those *Mahometans* who deny you the Justice you deserve! Doubtless the most extravagant Tenet of their Religion, is that which excludes you from Paradise.

who

who cannot suffer any other than their own.

There are at this Day in *Persia* a great many *Indians* and *Gaurs*, immersed in the Darkness of Idolatry. The first indeed believe there is but one God, who created Heaven and Earth : But they say that he afterwards made other Gods to preside over Affairs, being of himself alone insufficient to bear the Fatigues which every Day arise in the Government of the Heavens and the Earth. The chief of these Viceroy Gods are *Crason* and *Rama*, in the latter of whom they so much confide, that when they salute in the Street, instead of saying Good-morrow, or any thing like it, they only cry out *Rama, Rama!* All that is known concerning the Origin of these subaltern Gods, is, that they were Kings of these People, who reigned in Virtue and Justice, which prompted their ignorant Subjects to deify them, and regard them as their Patrons.

The Priests of these *Indians* are called *Brach-* Their  
*mans*, who all believe the *Metempsychosis*, and Priests be-  
therefore cannot bear to see any Animal de- lieve the  
prived of Life, lest perhaps the Soul of some *Metempsy-*  
one of their Relations may reside in its Body. *chosis.*

The young Beggars in *Persia* will go to these *Indians*, one with a Bird, another with a Mouse in his Hand, which they pretend to kill. Immediately the poor Idolater begs them to desist, and redeems the little Creature perhaps at an extravagant Price.

As I have spoken already of the *Guebres*, or *Gaurs*, I shall say nothing of them here.

There is not a Sovereign in the World more absolute, or more respected by his Sub-

The Re-  
spect  
shewn to a  
King of  
*Persia.*

jects than a King of *Persia*. It is Death for a Man to meet even one of his Concubines, as she passes along.

Character of the *Persians*. The *Persians* have always passed for the most knowing, and the most judicious of all the *Orientals*; they want neither Wit nor Vivacity.

A witty Saying of one of their great Lords.

A Saying of a great *Persian* Lord, reported by a certain Traveller, would not be disowned by the most sprightly *Gascon*. The Reader must know, that there is an Ass kept at the Court of *Persia* with much Respect, which on certain Days of *Gala* is brought into the royal Apartments, richly caparisoned, and there fed out of a golden Trough. This Ceremony was once performed before a *Spanish* Ambassador, who, extremely scandalized, and turning to a *Persian* Lord that was near him; *I am surprised*, says he, *That you make so much here of an Animal which we look upon in Spain as the vilest of his Kind.* The Reason of this Difference, replied the *Persian*, is not difficult to find: It is only because there are more Asses in Spain than in *Persia*.

Having spoken of the present State of the Kingdom of *Persia*, and of the Religion and Manners of its Inhabitants, I must say something of its Origin and Progress. The Subject is pretty extensive, but I will abridge it as much as possible.

Etymology of the Name of *Persia*.

Writers are not agreed about the Etymology of the Name of *Persia*. Some derive it from *Perseus*, who delivered *Andromeda*, the Daughter of *Cepheus*, from the Monster to which she was exposed. This *Perseus*, say they, went into the Country we are treating of,



of, and gave it his own Name. Others affirm it was called *Persia* from a Governor of *Elymais*, whose Name was *Perfes*. It would be too long to recount all the Opinions that have been started on this Subject, which upon the Whole is a Matter of no great Importance.

Progress  
of the  
*Persian*  
Monar-  
chy.

*Persia* was originally a Province of the Kingdom of *Assyria*. The *Medes* took Possession of it next, which they kept above 300 Years, and lost it at last in the following Manner.

*Astyages*, who began to reign over the *Medes* in the Year of the World 3360, had an only Daughter named *Mandane*. Being much addicted to Divination, he consulted the Wise Men, or Astrologers of his Kingdom, concerning the Fate of this Princess. They told him, that the Son which should be born of her would dethrone him. Alarmed at this News, he deliberated whether he should take away the Life of his Daughter: But paternal Affection overcame the Thirst of Empire. He resolv'd, however, to marry this Princess to some Lord of his own Court, that he might more easily dispose of the Children she should bring into the World. *Cambyfes* was the Nobleman pitched upon for this Purpose. During the Nuptial Rejoicings, the old King dreamed he saw a Fire, which encreasing every Moment, reduced all *Asia* into Cinders. Terrified at this Dream, he conceived new Apprehensions, and placed Spies of both Sexes about the Princess, to inform him of all that befel her. In six Months Time she was found pregnant, when the Spies were ordered to double their Diligence. They soon brought him Intelligence, that the Princess was delivered of a Son: The

*Astyages*  
King of  
the *Medes*.

Birth of  
The *Cyrus*.

King thought the only Way to prevent the Effect of the Prediction, was to get rid of the new-born Infant. He delivered him to *Harpagus*, one of his Chief-Ministers, with an Injunction to get him removed into some remote Place, and have him put to Death in his Presence ; adding, that his own Head should answer for what he did. *Harpagus* executed his Master's Orders in all but one Point, which was cutting the Throat of the young Prince ; instead of which he left him in a Wood to the Mercy of wild Beasts. Here the Child continued two or three Days, without being seen ; and all that while, it is said, he was suckled by a Bitch. At length a Shepherd coming to the Place, perceived the Prince. Far from guessing at his Quality, but touch'd with Compassion, he carried him to his Wife, who had lately been delivered of a Boy, which died the next Day. She nourished him at her own Breast, gave him the Name of *Cyrus*, and educated him among the young Shepherds. These looked upon him as their Sovereign, on Account of his Beauty and Strength. He had such a Greatness of Soul, that he could not persuade himself he was a Shepherd's Son ; and when his Foster Parents told him how they had found him, he concluded himself descended from Parents of the highest Rank. He often repeated it to his Comrades, that he was born to be a King, and not a Shepherd. These Speeches came to the Ear of *Astyages*, who beginning to entertain some Doubt, sent for *Harpagus*, and asked him if he had destroyed the Princess *Mandane's* Child. The old Courtier, thinking it impossible that the Prince should have escaped the Teeth of the wild

He is  
brought  
up among  
Shepherds.

wild Beasts, frankly confessed that he had not the Heart to have him killed ; but that he had left him in a Forest, where he must infallibly have perished. This Confession cost him dear : The wrathful King caused the Son of *Harpagus* to be cut in Pieces, and his Members served up to the Father at Table.

*Harpagus*, tho' sensible of the King's Barbarity, dissembled his Anxiety for the present : But getting together all the Money he could, he retired to *Cyrus*, related to him all the Mystery of his Birth, and how he had escaped being murdered ; exaggerating his Grandfather's Cruelty, and inspiring him with Sentiments of Revenge. *Cyrus*, prompted as well by his Ambition as by the pathetic Discourse of *Harpagus*, got together some hundred Shepherds, by means of the Money which *Harpagus* had brought him. With this little Army he threw himself into *Persia*, which, weary of the *Median* Yoke, rose up in Arms against *Astyages*. He, being informed of these Circumstances, marched against the Rebels, his Army all glittering with Gold and Silver. That of *Cyrus*, in the mean Time, was poor, but composed of People inured to Labour, and whom he had himself instructed in military Exercises, for which he had a peculiar Genius.

Raises an  
Army, and  
declares  
War a-  
gainst  
*Astyages*.

The two Armies soon met, and came to Blows. It was in the Year of the World 1391, that *Cyrus* gained so complete a Victory, as to destroy or take Prisoners almost all the *Medes*. *Astyages*, his Grandfather, was among the latter : But the young Prince's Greatness of Soul, would not suffer him to stain the Glory of his Triumph by the King's Murder. He pardoned him, and even re-established him in the

the Government of *Media*, provided he should take only the Title of Regent; and reserved for himself the Kingdom of *Persia*. *Astyages* dying a few Years after, *Media* was re-united to *Persia*, and made with it but one Kingdom. *Cyrus* engaged in several Wars, which he finished with Honour. He overthrew the Empire of the *Babylonians*, and took their King *Balthasar* Prisoner; conquered *Armenia*; dethroned and took *Cræsus* King of *Lydia*, famous for his Riches, which could now do him no Service. *Cyrus* is the same King which is mentioned in Scripture under that Name; and who, at the Taking of *Babylon*, restored the captive *Jews* to their Liberty.

His tragic  
End.

The End of this great Prince was as follows. Between the *Euxin* and *Caspian Seas* inhabited a *Scythian* Nation, called the *Massagetes*: They were governed by a Queen whose Name was *Tomyris*, who, besides a fine and artful Wit, was possessed of Courage beyond her Sex. *Cyrus* having a Quarrel with these People, marched against them with a powerful Army: But *Tomyris*, who knew herself too weak to risk a Battle with him, took Possession of all the Defiles thro' which he must pass to enter into her Country. Her Troops were so disposed, that she could re-unite them upon the first Signal, to fall upon the *Persians*. *Cyrus*, whether he had not prudently taken the Precaution to send out Parties, to reconnoitre the Situation of the Enemy, or whether these Parties failed in their Attempt, engaged the Queen among these Mountains. Scarcely was the Rear of his Army come up, be-

before the *Massagetes* appeared, attacked him on every Side, and cut his Troops to pieces. He lost his own Life in the Action; and it is said that *Tomyris*, having found his Body among the Dead, ordered his Head to be cut off, and dipped it herself in a Vessel full of human Blood, saying, *Satisfy thyself now with that Blood, after which thou hast always thirsted!*

*Cambyfes*, his Son by *Cassandane*, Daughter of Prince *Pharnaspes*, succeeded to the Crown. He made Addresses of Marriage to the Daughter of *Amasis* King of *Egypt*, of whose Beauty an *Egyptian* Physician, who had been at his Court, greatly boasted. The King of *Egypt* consented to this Alliance; but his Queen, who knew that Queens were not respected in *Persia*, but usually put upon a Level with the King's Concubines, substituted in the Room of her Daughter another Princess very deformed, whose Father, formerly King of *Egypt*, had been deposed by *Amasis*. *Cambyfes*

*Cambyfes*  
succeeds  
him.

*Cambyfes* easily saw through the Imposture, and was extremely enraged at it. He sent back the *Egyptian* Princess, and declared War against *Amasis*, who died whilst he was preparing to withstand him. His Son and Successor finished [the Preparations; but the War proved so fatal to him, that he lost his Army, his Liberty, and his Kingdom. *Cambyfes*, the cruel *Cambyfes*, massacred in one Day, and before the Face of this unhappy Prince, the whole Royal Family. It is said that *Psammenites* (which was the Name of this unfortunate Monarch) beheld these barbarous Executions without shedding a Tear :

He makes  
War upon  
the *Egyptians*.



Tear: And when *Cambyfes* asked him the Reason, his Answer was, (a) *That his Misfortunes were greater than his Tears.* It was not Insensibility, but Greatness of Soul; since he afterwards poisoned himself, tho' *Cambyfes* had gave him his Life.

The Kingdom of *Egypt* became a Province to the Kings of *Persia*, and *Cambyfes* longed to push on his Conquests farther. He made an Expedition into *Ethiopia*, in which he was not successful: For being ignorant that he must pass thro' a barren and desert Tract of Land, he took but little Provision, and thus ventured into a Country covered with burning Sands. Part of his Army perished there with Hunger and Thirst; so that he was obliged to return, and with much Difficulty recovered *Egypt*. He stopped at *Memphis*, the Capital, and gave there new Instances of his Cruelty. Having heard that one *Smerdis* had stirred up a Rebellion in *Persia*, he sent Orders to put to Death his own Brother, who bore the same Name. The Princess *Meroë* his Sister taking this Act of Cruelty to Heart, he cut off her Head with his own Sabre. Some Days after one of his Ministers, named *Prexaspes*, in whom he chiefly confided, endeavouring to dissuade him from a Habit of Drunkenness, to which he had given himself up, *Cambyfes* was so affronted, that having ordered the Minister's Son, a very hopeful Youth, to be brought in, he commanded him to be tied to a Stake, and let fly an Arrow into his Heart, which killed him on the Spot.

(a) *Domestica Mala Lachrymis esse majora.*

The *Magi*, who were the chief Men in An Impof-  
the State, fought every where for that Ad- tor raised  
venturer, who called himfelf Prince *Smerdis*, to the *Per-  
and* who had for fome Time hid himfelf, to *fian*  
avoid the Rage of *Cambyfes*. They found Throne.  
at laft the Place of his Retreat; and having  
drawn him from thence, partly by Force,  
and partly with his Consent, they placed  
him upon the Throne of *Persia*. *Cambyfes*,  
informed of this Revolution, levied fresh  
Troops in *Egypt*, to march againft his rebel  
Subjects: But Death cut fhort his Expedi- The Death  
tion; for as he was going to fet out, his of *Camby-  
Horfe* fell with him, and gave him fuch a *fes*.  
terrible Shock, that his Dagger flew out of  
the Scabbard, and, receiving him on the  
Point as he came to the Ground, paffed thro'  
his Body, upon which he instantly expired.

After his Death the falfe *Smerdis* faw him-  
felf in peaceable Poffeffion of the Kingdom  
of *Persia*; which however he did not long  
enjoy; for being in Bed one Night with one  
of his Concubines, ſhe obferved he had no  
Ears, which Difcovery ſhe communicated to  
a Confident, who ſpread it among the Gran-  
dees. Theſe Noblemen, enraged at the  
having ſuch a Maſter, conſpired againſt and  
aſſaffinated him. It was then known, that  
he had been a Scullion in the late King's  
Kitchen, and that having committed ſome  
Theft, *Cambyfes* ordered his Ears to be cut  
off, and banifhed him his Empire. His  
Reign was ſo ſhort, that ſome Hiſtorians have  
not comprifed him in the Liſt of *Persian* Mo-  
narchs.

The Uſurper being dead, and not one of The Elec-  
the Family of *Cyrus* remaining, the Grandees tion of a  
con- new King

*Darius*  
*Hystaspis*  
chosen.

concluded to elect a King from among themselves; but not agreeing about the Person, they referred it to the Decision of Chance. To this Purpose they ordained, that he whose Horse neighed first after Sun-rise, as they came into the Field of Election, should be acknowledged King of *Persia*. *Darius Hystaspis*, a *Satrapa* of the first Rank, carried it by an artful Contrivance of his Groom, which is foreign to our present Subject. The City of *Babylon* alone refused to obey the new King, for which it was punished as it deserved.

*Darius* marched afterwards against the *Scythians* who dwelt on this Side the *Black-Sea*, near the Banks of the *Danube*, in the Countries that are now known by the Names of the *Ukrain*, *Moldavia*, and *Walachia*. He was unsuccessful in that Expedition, as well as in another against the *Greeks*, when his Army of 100,000 Men was routed by *Miltiades* with only 12,000 *Athenians*, in the Plains of *Marathon*. *Darius* was so afflicted at this Loss, that he let fly an Arrow towards Heaven with this Exclamation, *O Jupiter, see that I am revenged on the Athenians!* And that his Resentment might not cool, he ordered that every Time he sat down to Table, a Page should cry aloud, *Sir, think of the Athenians!* But Death prevented the putting his Vengeance in Execution, by surprising him in the midst of his military Preparations against that Republick, in the Year of the World 3464.

*Xerxes* his  
Son suc-  
ceeds him.

*Xerxes I.* succeeded both to his Father's Throne, and to his Hatred against the *Greeks*. He raised an Army of 1,200,000 Men, with which he marched against the *Grecian States*, who

who united in one common League to oppose this formidable Power.

The King caused a Bridge of Boats to be formed between *Natolia* and *Romania*, across the *Hellepont*, which divides *Asia* from *Europe*. A Tempest carried away this Bridge; upon which he ordered the Workmen to be beheaded, had the Streight chained like a Malefactor, and the Sea whipped with Rods like a little Child.

These Extravagancies were no propitious Omens for his Enterprize, which proved altogether unfortunate. By the Means of a Traitor, he gained the Passage of *Thermopylae*; but *Pelopidas*, who commanded the *Lacedemonians* there posted, gave him a complete Overthrow, in which 20,000 *Persians* were killed on the Spot. His Troops were again routed near *Mount Arfemissus*, by *Themistocles*, General of the *Athenians*, who also beat his Navy in an Engagement near *Salamine*. *Xerxes*, repulsed by such a Number of Misfortunes, thought of returning into *Persia*. He took with him 600,000 Men, and left the rest of his Army, which still amounted to 200,000 more, to his General *Mardonius*. His Retreat had entirely the Air of a precipitate Flight; and this mighty King, who a little Time before had laid a Bridge over the *Hellepont*, was now obliged to repass it in a pitiful Skiff. Scarce 200 of the 600,000 Men he took with him, ever returned into *Persia*; the rest were either dispersed, or perished with Hunger and Fatigue. *Mardonius*, who remained in *Greece*, continued the War; but coming to a pitch'd Battle with the *Lacedemonians*, commanded

He makes  
an unsuccessful  
War upon  
the *Greeks*.

by *Pausanias*, he was totally routed at *Platæa*. The Relicks of his Troops were obliged to evacuate *Greece*; and the *Persian* Navy, which had hitherto made a Figure, was effectually ruined over-against *Mount Mycale*, in the Year of the World 3471.

He is assassinated.

*Artaxerxes Longimanus* succeeds him.

Such a Number of Disappointments, one upon the Neck of another, made the *Persian* Monarch quite sick of War. He proposed, at his Return into *Persia*, to pass the Residue of his Days in Pleasure; and scarce was he arrived there, but he gave himself up to Debauchery. At last, he was assassinated one Evening in his Cups, by *Artabanus* the *Hyracanian Satrapa*. The same Nobleman dispatched also his eldest Son, *Darius*, or *Dariæus*; so that *Artaxerxes*, the second, was placed on the Throne. *Artabanus*, grown rash thro' the Success of his Enterprises, and the Impunity he met with, thought next of rising to Royalty, and conspired against the Life of the new Monarch; but the Plot was discovered, and the Traitor received his just Reward. This *Artaxerxes* is spoke of in the Books of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*. He was called *Long-hand*, on account of the great Length of his Arms. He reigned 40 Years, and died *An. Mund.* 3525, after a long effeminate Life. His Son *Xerxes* II. succeeded him, but reigned only seven Months.

*Darius Nothus* reigns with little Reputation.

*Darius Nothus*, or the Bastard, mounted the Throne after the Death of *Xerxes*. He was the Son of *Artaxerxes* by one of his Concubines. He reigned 19 Years, and died with little Reputation. It was in his Time that the *Jews* finished the Building of their second Temple.

*Ar-*



*Artaxerxes* II. firnamed *Mnemon*, succeeded *Nothus*, and reigned 43 Years. His Brother *Cyrus* attempted to dethrone him, but was killed in that Battle so famous among Historians for the Retreat of the 10,000 *Greeks*, who came to his Assistance, and who, after his Death, returned Home thro' the *Persian* Empire, under the Conduct of *Xenophon*, in Spite of the Ambuscades which *Artaxerxes* had laid to intercept them. *Artaxerxes* II. succeeds.

*Artaxerxes* being dead, his Son *Ochus* succeeded him, and reigned 22 Years. He was a cruel and barbarous Prince. The *Egyptians* revolting in his Time, he marched against them, defeated their King *Nectanebus*, who was obliged to take refuge in *Macedonia*, caused the Ox which the *Egyptians* worshipped under the Name of *Apis* to be butchered, and obliged that miserable People to adore an *Afs*. This last God indeed was as good as the other in reality, but not according to the Reasoning of the *Egyptians*, who were not brought over to this new Worship without a great deal of Violence. *Ochus* committed also many Cruelties against his own Subjects; so that the *Persians*, not thinking themselves safe under so barbarous a Sovereign, formed several Conspiracies against his Life. At last *Bagoas*, one of the Generals of his Army, dispatched him by Poison, exposed his Flesh for a Prey to the Fowls, and converted his Bones into Knife-handles and Sword-hilts. *Ochus* succeeds *Artaxerxes*. He is poisoned.

*Arfamenes*, by some Authors called *Arfames*, succeeded *Ochus* his Father. He reigned but 3 Years, and died *Anno Mundi* 3614. *Arfamenes* his Successor.

*Darius Codomanus* advanced to the Throne. *Darius Codomanus*, a General only, was advanced to the supreme Dignity by *Bagoas*. This new King making an Entertainment one Day to all his Court, *Bagoas* ordered him to dance while himself played on the Flute, which he did tolerably well : But the King refusing, *Bagoas* was so affronted, that he conspired against his Person. The Plot was seasonably discovered to *Darius*, and *Bagoas* received the Punishment he deserved.

Dethroned by *Alexander the Great*. Every one knows, that after a Reign of only five Years, *Darius* was dethroned by *Alexander* King of *Macedon*; and that *Bessus*, one of his Grandees, murdered him, in the Year of the World 3617.

*Alexander* poisoned. *Alexander the Great*, having conquered all *Asia*, came to *Babylon*, and was there poisoned in the 32d Year of his Age, ten Years after the Death of *Darius*. His vast Acquisitions were then divided among his Generals, the chief of whom were *Perdiccas*, *Molocher*, *Ptolomey*, *Python*, *Eumenes*, *Artigonus*, *Cassander*, *Leonatus*, *Lyfimachus*, *Craterus*, *Glearchus*, and *Antipater*, who all assumed the Title of King.

*Persia* is divided. *Persia* was then divided between the Governments of *Asia Minor* and *Syria*: But this Division subsisted only about ninety Years, when the *Persians*, weary of the *Grecian* Yoke, shook it from off their Shoulders.

Empire of the *Parthians*. There was a Province in *Persia* of very inconsiderable Extent, known by the Name of *Parthia*. The Inhabitants derived their Origin from the *Scythians*, were esteemed a brave People, and the best Archers in the World. *Hecatompolis*, the Capital of *Parthia*,

*thia*, was situated almost in the same Place where *Ispahan* now stands. The Name of *Parthians*, by which these People were distinguished, is said to signify *Exiles*, and to have been conferred on them for their flying into *Persia*, during some Commotions in their native Country. Be that as it will, these were the first People that ventured to revolt against the *Greeks*, who, after the Death of *Alexander*, were split into so many Factions, that the *Parthians* recovered their Freedom without Difficulty.

Their first King was one *Arfaces*, who Their first reigned in the Year of the World 3700. and last From him down to *Artabanus IV*, during a King. Period of about 478 Years, there were twenty-five Kings of the *Parthians*. *Artabanus IV*. was dethroned by one *Artaxerxes*, a *Persian* of mean Birth, but extraordinary Courage. The *Parthian* Empire coming to an End, that of the *Persians* revived, and flourished as before. This Revolution happened *An. Chrisf.* 229, in the Reign of *Alexander Severus*, Successor of *Heliogabalus*. In a Word, the *Parthians* were often at War with the *Romans*, and came off always with Honour: But their Power at last had the Fate of other sublunary Things, whose Duration is but a Dream. *Sapores I.* succeeded his Father *Artaxerxes*; and from him to *Isdegerdes*, the last King of that Race, was a Period of 408 Years.

After the Death of *Isdegerdes*, who reigned Empire of but a few Months, the *Saracens* invaded *Per-* the *Cas-*  
*sia*, where their Caliphs obtained the Sove- liphs.  
reignty. — Perhaps it may be of Service

in a few Words to give the Origin of this great Revolution.

*Mahomet.* It is well known what rapid Progress the Doctrine of the false Prophet *Mahomet* made in the East. The *Persians* having received it, *Mahomet* seized the Reins of Government, and continued to impose his new Law upon the neighbouring Nations, by Force of Arms. Many Authors rack their Invention to find the Etymology of the Word *Saracen*. But the Opinion which seems to me the most probable, is that which derives this Name from the *Arabian* Word *Saraca*, *Free-booter*, *Robber*; that People living only on the Pilgrage and Spoil of others.

*Abubecker.* After the Death of *Mahomet*, which happened in the Year 631, *Abubecker* succeeded in the Government of *Persia*. *Caliph* signifies Successor, and he was the first who bore that Name. Being old when he ascended the Throne, he filled it only two Years and a few Months.

*Omar.* *Ali*, *Mahomet's* Son-in-Law, who had married *Fatima* that Impostor's Daughter, was overjoyed at *Abubecker's* Death. At last, he thought it was his Turn to reign. But he was mistaken for the present, and *Omar* was chosen Caliph or Successor to *Abubecker*. *Omar* extended wide the Conquests of the *Saracens*. His first Enterprize was against *Syria*, which the *Grecian* Emperors till then possessed. He besieged and took *Damascus*, the Capital, after which all the rest of that vast Province submitted. This happened in the Reign of the Emperor *Heraclius*. *Omar* afterwards marched against *Palestine*, and made himself Master of *Jerusalem* in 633.

*Palest-*

*Palestine*, a Country sanctified by the Presence of our Saviour, continued in the Hands of the *Saracens* till 1099, when it was wrested from them by the *Crusades*. In a Word, *Omar* was fortunate in all his Wars: He subdued *Egypt*, took *Alexandria*, at that Time its Capital; intirely extinguished the royal Family of *Persia*, and brought into Subjection those Parts of the Kingdom, which had hitherto held out against the *Arabs* and *Saracens*. He was murdered at last by one of his own Domesticks.

*Osman* succeeded to the Caliphate, and *Osman*. was not less fortunate in War than his Predecessor. He extended his Conquests into *Africa*, and subdued all *Barbary*. He became Master of the Island of *Rhodes* in 653. At last he was assassinated by the great Men of his Court, who had entertained against him an implacable Hatred, on Account of his bestowing all the chief Employments on his own Relations.

*Ali*, *Mahomet's* Son-in-Law, came at last *Ali*. to the Empire, tho' not without Opposition. Many Grandees refused to acknowledge him for their Sovereign, among whom the chief were one *Ajisja*, and *Muavius* Governor of *Syria*. *Ali* marched against *Ajisja*, and gave him so bloody an Overthrow, that 30,000 Men lay dead on the Field. It is said that the Camel upon which *Ajisja* rode, was stuck so full of the Enemies Arrows, that he resembled a Hedge-hog, and that seventy Hands were found hanging upon the Reins of his Bridle, which *Ajisja* had cut off from so many of *Ali's* Party, who had attempted to take him Prisoner.

After



After the Defeat of *Ajisja*, *Ali* marched against his other Competitor, the Governor of *Syria*, who had an Army at least as numerous as that of *Ali*. They met near a Place called *Saffeina*; but being both advantageously posted, neither of the Generals would run the Hazard of a decisive Battle. Both Sides contented themselves with sending out large Parties, who usually came to Blows; and it is affirmed that in 110 Days which they lay near each other, no less than ninety Skirmishes were fought. At last, being equally weakened, they began mutually to make Propositions of Peace. *Ali* nominated *Abumasa* for his Plenipotentiary, and *Muavius* chose *Amri* for his. After many Debates, they agreed that *Ali* should remain Caliph of *Persia*, and *Muavius* Caliph of *Syria*. But this compromising the Affair being disrelished by several Officers of both Armies, they consented to assassinate the two Caliphs. He who undertook to murder *Ali* succeeded so well, that he gave him a Wound which killed him in three Days: But the other, who took Charge of *Muavius*, though he wounded him with an impoisoned Sabre, did it so slightly that he was very soon cured.

*Ali* had reigned only four Years and nine Months. He was a Man of Genius, and wrote Commentaries upon the *Koran*, quite agreeable to the *Persian* Taste. He softened some Precepts, that, literally taken, could hardly be kept, which won him the Affection of all moderate *Mahometans*: But his Doctrine was not in Vogue till *Scheich-Adar* began to teach it, as I shall observe hereafter. The *Turks*, ever attached to the literal Sense  
of

of the *Koran*, abominate the Doctrine of *Ali*. The *Persians*, on the contrary, regard him as the greatest of all the Servants of God after *Mahomet*, and usually give him the pompous Title of ASSAD ALLAH AL GALED, *The invincible Lion of God*. His History is embellished with all Sorts of impertinent Miracles, and whoever is bold enough to speak of him irreverently, must pay for it with his Life.

*Hussein*, the Son of *Ali*, succeeded him in the Caliphate. He was soon after poisoned by his Wife. His Descendants continued to reign over the *Persians* till the Caliphate of *Arradis Billa*, when that People, weary of the *Arabian Yoke*, entertained Thoughts of delivering themselves from it. One *Mardawigus*, a *Persian* of great Resolution, sap-  
*Hussein.*

The Family of the *Bojites*, an unfortunate Remnant of the Race of *Darius Hystaspes*, began now to revive, and renew their antient Claim to the *Persian* Diadem. This Family lived in Obscurity; and *Bojas* himself, from whom it derived its Name, had been obliged to follow the Trade of a Fisherman, to avoid the Cruelty of the *Arabian* Caliphs, who had cut off all the Descendants of the last royal Race. The *Bojites*, his Descendants, assassinated *Mardawigus*, and took Possession of the Government. Empire of the *Bojites*.

*Amadubdaulus* was the first *Persian* King Their first of this Family. He began to reign in 934, and last and his Descendants filled the Throne till King. 1055. *Melecrabim* was the last of the *Bojite* Monarchs.

He was deposed by the *Turcomans*, whose Chief, called *Togrul-Beck*, descended from  
 They are dispossessed by the *Turcomans*.

the Family of *Salghuck*. This Family, which Genealogists call the *Salgucides*, maintained itself on the Throne of *Persia* almost 169 Years. *Abulcasemus*, the last King of this Race, died in 1135.

*Persia* falls into an Anarchy, and is subdued by the *Tartars*.

After his Death an Anarchy succeeded in *Persia*, which severely felt its fatal Consequences. The *Tartars*, taking Advantage of this Disorder, entered it with an armed Force, and reduced it with little Difficulty. They maintained their Authority till 1337, when the last of their Leaders dying, every Governor of a Province sat up for Sovereign Power. A Kingdom thus divided in itself, could not long subsist: This their Neighbours comprehended well, and made use of the Opportunity to their own Advantages.

The Progress of *Tamerlan*.

*Tamerlan*\*, who from a simple Shepherd, was raised to the Dignity of General of the *Asiatic Tartars*, and afterwards to be King of the same People, in the 16th Year of his Reign entered into *Persia*, where every thing gave way before him. He had before subdued the *Tartars* between the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas; conquered *China*; like a Torrent ravaged the *Mogul* Empire, and the Kingdoms of *Siam*, *Pegu*, *Ava*, and *Japan*; not to mention many other vast Countries which he had laid desolate. He was soon looked upon as the *Attila* of the East, and the Scourge of Heaven. His Design was to bring under Subjection the three Parts of the known

\* His Name was properly *Temur-lanc*, which in the *Tartar* Language signifies *Temur the lame*, which the *Europeans* have corrupted into *Tamerlane*.

World; *Asia* already received his Laws, and *Europe* came next in his System. The *Turks*, who were established in *Asia Minor*, well foresaw, that if *Tamerlan* aimed at carrying his Arms into *Europe*, they should be first exposed to his Invasions, as lying exactly in his Way: For which Reason *Bajazet* I. their grand Sultan, entered into an Alliance with *Emanuel* II. Emperor of *Constantinople*, to oppose this haughty Conqueror.

*Tamerlan*, informed of what *Bajazet* had done, marched against him with an Army of 500,000 Warriors. That of *Bajazet*, united with the *Greeks*, was not less numerous. These two mighty Hosts met in *Natolia*, and came to an Engagement, wherein the Fortune of *Tamerlan* triumphed over the Valour of the *Turks*. What contributed the most to this Victory, was the Desertion of the *Tartars* in *Bajazet's* Army, who, at the Beginning of the Action, revolted to *Tamerlan*. There was a terrible Slaughter of *Turks* and *Greeks*: And the unhappy *Bajazet*, after having done all that could be expected from a great Commander, seeing there was no Possibility of restoring Affairs, fled for his Life in the Habit of a Soldier. But his ill Fortune so contrived it, that his Hounds, which went every where in his Train, and were here to the Number of 7,000, followed him by the Track, and set up such a Cry as discovered him to the pursuing *Tartars*. He was brought alive to *Tamerlan*, who put him into an Iron Cage, and treated him like a Dog; till at last, through a Sense of the Indignities imposed on him by the Conqueror, the unhappy Prince died with Excess of Grief.

After

His Pro-  
jects.

After this Victory *Tamerlan* thought of no less than passing into *France*; of subduing *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Germany*: But he was soon called to another Quarter, upon the News that Part of *India* had revolted. He sat forwards to go and punish these Rebels; but had not been many Days upon the Road before he fell sick, and died in the Year of our Lord 1404.

His Death  
and Cha-  
racter.

*Tamerlan* might have been compared with *Alexander the Great*, for the Rapidity of his Conquests, and the Number of his Victories, if he had not sullied them by the Cruelty of his Actions. It was his Custom when he laid Siege to any Place, to have three Flags displayed at the Head of the Camp for three successive Days: The first was white, the second red, and the third black. At the Beginning of the Siege the white one was set up, which signified to the Inhabitants, that if they surrendered immediately, they should receive no Damage. If they waited for the red one, that was a Signal that the Heads of the City must suffer Death. But if they did not submit before the black one took Place, there was no Quarter to be expected for any of the Inhabitants, but all to a Man were put to the Sword. The City of *Sebastia*, or *Sivas*, in *Cappadocia*, experienced the Fury of this Conqueror on such an Occasion. The white Flag had been hung out, and disregarded by the Citizens. Some Days after the red one appeared; when the Besieged, seeing themselves in great Distress, capitulated. *Tamerlan* pardoned the Tradesmen and Mechanicks; but all the Persons of Quality who were found

When he  
besieged a  
Place, he  
set up  
three  
Flags.



found there, suffered a Death which one trembles to think of.

After the Death of *Tamerlan*, a People The Tur- sprung from *Turcomania* invaded *Persia*. comans re- They were divided into two Factions, that enter Per- of the *black* and that of the *white Ram*. The *sia*, and are Faction of the *black Ram* was first established divided into two Factions. in *Persia*, and supplied it with five Kings, who reigned sixty-one Years, from 1408 till 1469. The first of these Kings was called *Kara-Issuf*, which signifies *Joseph the Black*. The last was *Azelany*.

The Faction of the *white Ram* supplanted Accession that of the *black*. *Usumcassan*, its Chief, of *Usum-* seized the Reins of Empire, and held them *cassan* to the eight or nine Years, till 1478. He was one of the greatest and most powerful Monarchs the Throne. that ever sat on the *Persian* Throne. He married a Christian Princess, descended from the Emperors of *Trebizonde*, which was the Cause of his declaring War against the *Turks*. *Mahomet II.* had effectually put an End to the *Grecian* Empire, by making himself Master of *Constantinople*. *Usumcassan* sent to him a magnificent Embassy, under Pretence of felicitating him on his Success, but in reality to demand the Restitution of *Cilicia*, and whatever had belonged to the Empire of *Trebizond*, upon which *Usumcassan* had Pretensions. *Mahomet* amused the Ambassadors for some Time with fair Promises, and in the mean while prepared for his Defence.

It gave the utmost Satisfaction to all He makes *Christendom*, when the Misunderstanding be- War on tween these two Princes came to be known. the *Turks*. The Power of *Mahomet II.* had spread an Alarm over all *Europe*, and the *Venetians*, in particular, were in great Consternation since

The HISTORY of

the Taking of *Constantinople*. They wanted nothing better than to see the Sultan employed in *Asia*, lest he should turn his Arms against their Republick, which he might now easily invade. They made an Alliance therefore with *Usumcassan*, and engaged to furnish him with a Fleet, and with Ammunitions. In 1472 the Hostilities began between the *Persians* and the *Turks*, in which the former got several Advantages on the Side of the *Euphrates*. The next Year they pushed the War into the very Heart of *Natolia*, where they routed a Body of 30,000 *Turks*. *Mahomet*, alarmed at the Enemy's Successes, advanced with his main Army, 300,000 strong. That of the *Persians* was equally numerous. They came to a general Engagement, in which the *Turks* had the Superiority. They owed their Victory to a few Pieces of Cannon and Hand-Guns, of which they had just learned the Use, and the Sound of which so terrified the *Persian* Cavalry, that they took to Flight. The greatest Part of the Infantry, environed on all Sides by the *Turks*, laid down their Arms: But a very few escaped; and the rest were killed on the Spot.

*Mahomet's Cruelty to the Captives.* *Mahomet* took a great Number of Prisoners, whom he used with unparallell'd Cruelty. Every Evening, when his Army came into Quarters, he ordered 500 of the unhappy Victims to be cut in two at the Waist, and their divided Bodies to be strew'd over the adjacent Fields. This Barbarity spread such a Panic, that the *Persian* Court scarcely thought itself in Safety.

*Usum-*

*Usumcassan's* Stedfastness re-established every one else. He ordered new Levies through all his vast Dominions, and used the utmost Diligence to repair his Losses: But an Accident happened which disconcerted all his Projects. His eldest Son, whose Name was *Ungermaumeth*, impatient of coming to the Throne, conspired against his Father. *Usumcassan* was so beloved by his Subjects, that not one offered to second the pernicious Designs of the Prince. Perceiving he should not be supported, and fearing the Resentment of his Father, *Ungermaumeth* escaped secretly out of *Persia*, and took Refuge in the Court of *Mahomet II.* *Usumcassan*, justly irritated at his Son's Conduct, meditated Revenge. To effect it he feigned himself sick, had the Gates of his Palace all shut, and a Report given out soon after that he was dead. The News quickly arrived at the Court of *Constantinople*, where the Prince resided, who, persuaded of the Truth of what he heard, made all possible Haste to take Possession of the Kingdom of *Persia.* *Usumcassan* had his proper Spies, who soon gave Advice of the Son's Arrival. He ordered him to be received with great Marks of Joy and Respect, and that, leaving him still in the Dark, they should bring him into the Palace, as if to assist at the Funeral Obsequies of the King his Father. The poor Prince, imposed upon by those about him, who appeared all in Mourning, suffered himself to be conducted into the Palace Royal. But how was he surprised when he saw the King himself sitting upon his Throne, in a very different State from what he had expected! His Reception was such as he deserved.

After reproaching him with his Crime, *Usumcassan* had him locked up in Prison, where within a few Days he was strangled.

His Son  
*Yacubeck*  
succeeds,  
whose  
Wife  
endea-  
vours to  
poison  
him.

*Usumcassan* died in the 78th Year of his Age, a short Time after the Death of his Son. *Yacubeck*, or *Jacobus*, his second Son, succeeded him. This Prince had a treacherous Wife, who being in Love with a *Persian* Lord, resolved to poison her Husband, and advance her Lover to the Throne. For this Purpose she prepared a very subtil Poison, which she put into a Liquor that she gave the King at his Coming out of the Bath. The King mistrusted her Fidelity, and observing her Countenance to turn pale in the Instant, declared that he would not drink, unless after her.

The Queen, seeing her Death inevitable, did not long consider which Party to take. The Poison seemed the easiest Way. Besides, she still hoped that the King would follow her Example; and it was no little Matter with a Woman of her Character, that she could have the Consolation of destroying her Husband with herself. She took the Draught, and swallowed a Part of it. The King, who now apprehended no Danger, took also a reasonable Dose, and gave the rest to his eldest Son, a Child about 8 Years old. They were all three found the next Morning dead in their Beds.

There were some other Kings of the Faction of the White Ram, whose Lives had nothing remarkable enough to engage our Attention. *Alvantes*, the last, reigned only 8 Months, and was succeeded by *Ismael Sophi*.

The

The Family of the *Sophi's* is so famous in the History of *Persia*, that I cannot forbear giving an Account of it in this Place; more especially as the late Kings, immediate Predecessors of *Kouli Kan*, were descended from it. One *Sophi*, or *Sephi*, who descended from *Muza-Kaizem*, one of the twelve Grandsons of *Ali*, was the Founder of it. He made himself known about the End of the fourteenth Century, by so exemplary a Life, that he is looked upon in *Persia* as a Saint of the first Rank. *Tamerlan* earnestly sought his Acquaintance, and was so charmed with his Sweetness and Piety, that on his Return from the Campaign in which he defeated *Bajazet*, he made him a Present of 30,000 Captives, which he had taken on that memorable Day.

Origin  
of the Fa-  
mily of the  
*Sophi's*.  
Character  
of their  
Head.

*Sophi* was one of the greatest Champions of the Sect of *Ali*. He preached his Doctrine to all who would attend it, and by that Means secured a considerable Party. As he had private Views, he endeavoured to engage to his Interest the 30,000 Captives before-mentioned. He instructed them in the Doctrine of *Ali*, and treated them with so much Moderation and Goodness, that these unhappy Wretches, who expected to feel the Effects of *Tamerlan's* Cruelty, were melted by the Generosity of their Benefactor, and bound to him by Ties of the most lively Gratitude, of which they zealously gave Testimony, both to him and to his Posterity. *Sophi*, observing Matters to take so favourable a Turn, waited only for a propitious Moment to take the Advantage of the People's



Disposition; but died while he was in the Expectation.

*Guimenes*,  
one of his  
Sons.

*Scheich*  
*Aidar*, another  
Son.

His Son *Guimenes* succeeded in the Office of Prophet, and Head of the Sect of *Ali*. As he had not near the Genius of his Father, he did nothing remarkable: But in return, there was another Son, called *Scheich Aidar-Sophi*, who made himself so much respected, that *Usumcassan* did not scruple to bestow on him his Daughter *Martha* in Marriage, whom he had by his Wife the Daughter of *Calo-John* Emperor of *Trebizoned*. *Scheich Aidar* knew so well how to render himself popular, by a Pretence to Piety and Zeal for the Doctrine of *Ali*, that he drew an infinite Number over to his Interest. A prodigious Crowd followed him wherever he went, and he soon became as formidable a Prince, as he was before a devout Prophet. He was a great Politician, and had the Address to persuade his Partizans, that there was no Paradise but for those who adhered to the Doctrine of *Ali*, in the Manner he preached it. He usually resided at *Ardebil*, which is said to have been his Lordship, as it was that of his Ancestors. There he taught publicly the Doctrine of *Ali*; and, that he might give no Umbrage to the Court, shewed the utmost Contempt for Riches and Honour. In a Word, he affected to have nothing in View but the spiritual Good of Souls.

Suspected  
by *Rustan*,  
who  
gets him  
assassinated.

But how deep soever was his Dissimulation, he could not avoid the Suspicion of *Rustan*, one of the Successors of *Usumcassan*. This Prince, frightened at the Concourse of People that assembled round *Scheich Aidar*, and at the Reputation he acquired, apprehended he

he might abuse these Advantages by exciting a Rebellion: Especially as he seemed to have an incontestable Right to the Crown of *Persia*, after the Death of *Usumcassan's* Children, from his Marriage with the Daughter of that Monarch. *Rustan* was one of those incredulous Sort of Men who cannot trust to a pious Outside, but are apt to suspect that the more humble and self-denying a Saint appears, the more Pride and Ambition he has in his Heart. Upon this Principle he concluded, that the surest Way he could take was to get rid of such a Competitor, who was but so much the more dangerous, the less he pretended to Competition. He sent out proper Persons, who soon delivered him from his Fears, by assassinating *Scheich Aidar* even in *Ardebil* itself.

*Scheich Aidar* left three Sons at his Death; two of whom, then at Years of Discretion, fled from the Danger that threatened them, one into *Natolia*, the other to *Aleppo*. The Fate of his three Sons.

*Ismael*, the third, who was yet an Infant, was brought up by his Father's Friends, and removed into *Hyrcania*, in the Family of one *Pyrchalim*, the Lord of several Places on the Borders of the *Caspian Sea*, and who had been a great Stickler for *Scheich Aidar*. Character of *Ismael* the youngest.

*Pyrchalim* took great Care both of the Person and Education of young *Ismael*; had him instructed in the Doctrine of *Ali*, and all the Sciences becoming a Person born for the greatest Things. The Youth perfectly well answered his Protector's Expectation; possessed an infinite deal of Wit and Penetration, and, besides these excellent Qualities,

ties, had all the Advantages of a fine Person. He was extremely Eloquent and Persuasive: The Graces of his Voice, joined to those of his Figure, won immediately on the Hearts of Men; and laid a Foundation for the most towering Hopes. These were greatly augmented by a Prediction of *Scheich Aidar* his Father, who passed for a learned Astrologer and great Prophet. He declared that his Son *Ismael* would become the greatest Conqueror of the East, and that, if God preserved his Life, he should even equal the Glory of *Mahomet* himself.

*Ismael*, arrived at Years of Maturity, began to make the best of the Talents which Nature had given him. His Eloquence soon got him a considerable Party; and it was not merely the Populace that declared for him, as in the Days of his Father, but the chief Men of the Kingdom. *Ismael* well understood the Rights he had to the Crown; but thought proper to dissemble, and, like his Father, affect a Contempt for the Honours of this World. This was only till he saw himself well supported. He then began to urge his Pretensions, demanding first to be put in Possession of the Estates which *Usuncassan* had left his Mother, and which were situated in *Armenia*. Upon the Court's refusing to comply with this, he disciplined a petty Army, to which he added some Troops that were sent him by *Pyrchalim*. With these he marched into *Armenia*, and seized on the Lands that were his just Inheritance.

His Con-  
quests.

Encouraged by the first Success, and seeing his Army every Day increase, *Ismael* advanced against the Castle of *Marmulac*, where a  
pro-

prodigious deal of Wealth was repositied. He soon took the Castle, and carried off the Treasure. Next he threw himself into *Mesopotamia*, besieged *Sumach* the Capital, took it, and left the Plunder of it to his Soldiers.

The Fame of his Conquests soon spread itself all over *Persia*, and every one said that the Prophecy of *Scheich Aidar* was about to be accomplished. The good Condition *Ismael's* Troops were known to be in, and the Booty they had acquired, animated the most Inactive, and brought him in Recruits from every Quarter. He wanted neither Arms nor Ammunition; his only Deficiency was of good Officers: But the Nobility beginning to come over to him, he had soon a very gallant and well-disciplin'd Army.

The Court then resided at *Tauris*. *Alvantes* was at last on the Throne, in Spite of the Opposition of his Brother *Morat-Kan*, whom he had defeated in a pitched Battle. But this new King made an ill Use of his Victory, and some of the chief Men in *Persia* fell a Sacrifice to his Vengeance. He caused to be executed at *Tauris*, not only a great Number of Lords who had been in Arms for his Brother, but even others whom he only suspected to have favoured him. This Conduct drew down on him the Hatred of the Nobility, and alienated the Hearts of all the Inhabitants of *Tauris*.

*Ismael*, informed of these Circumstances, seized the happy Occasion, and marched directly to *Tauris*. Scarce did his Van-guard appear, but the Inhabitants threw open their Gates. *Alvantes*, seeing himself abandoned by all his Subjects, reduced only to his Guards,

His War  
against  
*Alvantes*  
and *Morat*  
*Kan*.

Guards, and the hostile Army ready to enter the City, could think of nothing but Flight. He put his Project so suddenly in Execution, that he had Time enough to secure his Person. *Ismael* entered the City, and had the Pleasure to see himself Master of that Capital, without shedding a Drop of Blood.

Having given his Troops sufficient Repose, he prepared to follow the fugitive King. In the mean while he learn'd that *Morat-Kan*, Brother of this Prince, having saved himself in the Neighbourhood of *Babylon* after his Defeat, and there raised an Army, had made Peace with his Brother, and was going to join him with his Troops, to oppose one whom they looked upon as their common Enemy. This vexatious Piece of News no way incommoded *Ismael*, who now rightly judged that all the Success depended on his Diligence, which must be to hinder the Junction of his two Antagonists. *Alvantes* was then in *Armenia*, at the Head of a considerable Army. *Ismael* directed his Route that Way, and marched with such Expedition, that he came up with the King before he was joined by his Brother. The Battle began, and was at first very obstinate. *Alvantes*, resolved either to perish or recover his Crown, behaved gallantly: But being killed in the second Charge, his Troops lost heart, and made little more Resistance.

*Morat Kan*, who was distant but three Days March, hearing of the Defeat and Death of his Brother, turned off towards *Tauris*, in hopes to reduce it before *Ismael* could come to its Succour. He was mistaken however, and



and found he had to do with an active Enemy, and one who had good Intelligence. *Ismael* was at his Heels, overtook him about Mid-way to *Tauris*, gave him Battle, and totally routed his Army. *Morat Kan* got off with a few of his Cavalry, and retired into the Estates of *Aladul* King of *Cappadocia*. *Ismael*, by this Retreat, was left in sole Possession of the Crown of *Persia*.

This great Revolution happened in the Year 1499. The next Year *Ismael* prepared to go in Quest of *Morat Kan*, even in<sup>r</sup> the States of the King of *Cappadocia*. He entered them with an Army of 70,000 Men; but made no great Progress, the Season being far advanced, and Provisions having run short from the Beginning. In 1501 he returned at the Head of 40,000 Soldiers, and was more fortunate than before: For meeting the Army of *Morat Kan* and *Aladul* near *Babylon*, he gave them an entire Defeat. *Morat Kan* took Shelter with the Sultan of *Egypt*, and never appeared more in *Persia*. *Aladul* retired into *Cappadocia*. *Ismael*, taking the Advantage of his Victory, seized on *Babylon*, and subdued all *Mesopotamia*, with some other neighbouring Provinces.

Being delivered from his Competitors, he in the next Place chastised the *Tartars*, the *Iberians*, and the *Albanians*, \* who had for some Time refused to pay the established Tribute to the Kings of *Persia*.

\* I must inform the Reader, that he should be careful not to confound the *Persian Albania* with a Province of the same Name in *Greece*, upon the Borders of *Macedonia*.

Having

Makes  
War upon  
the King  
of Samar-  
cand.

Having reduced these People to Reason, *Ismael* declared War against the King of *Samar-cand*, one of the most powerful Princes of the East ; and gained one of the most glorious of all his Victories. The Sultan of *Egypt* was alarmed at this, and *Bajazet* II. then Emperor of the *Turks*, trembled for his own Estates. It was not without Cause that these two Potentates dreaded *Ismael*. The Valour of this heroic Prince, the Love and Fidelity of his Troops, and their good Order and Discipline, were the Subject of all Conversations.

*Bajazet*  
declares  
War a-  
gainst *Is-*  
*mael*.

*Bajazet* was the first who attempted to oppose this Torrent. He declared War against *Ismael*: But as he carried it on by his Vizirs only, *Ismael* was content to send against him valiant and experienced Generals. No remarkable Advantage was gained on either Side, till *Selim*, Successor to *Bajazet*, putting himself at the Head of his Troops, *Ismael* also commanded his in Person. A Battle ensued, in which *Selim* had somewhat the better, by means of his Artillery, of which the *Persians* knew little. *Selim* upon this got Possession of *Tauris*: But *Ismael* having recovered his Loss, made haste to engage him afresh. The *Turk* did not think fit to wait his coming: He had lost so many Men in his Victory, and the *Janissaries* were so disheartened, that he saw himself obliged to retire with Precipitation, and leave behind him Part of his Cannon.

Proof of the  
Affection  
of *Ismael's*  
Soldiers.

It has been remarked as a very singular Thing, and a Proof of the Soldiers prodigious Esteem for *Ismael*, that during the long Course of this and all his preceding Wars, not

not one *Persian* ever deserted; whereas the *Turks* came by Hundreds into *Ismael's* Camp. It was as much to this Affection of his Soldiers, as to his own wise Conduct, that he owed the Expulsion of *Selim*, who, spite of all his Efforts, could never wrest from him an Inch of his Conquests.

*Ismael* died in Peace Anno 1525, in the 45th Year of his Age. The Love of his People, and the hearty Esteem of all his Soldiers, accompanied him to his Grave; which is doubtless the finest Panegyric that can be made of a great Prince. He left four Sons, *Thamas*, *Helcas*, *Bocram*, and *Sormisa*. The first, aged 18, succeeded him, and the others received each his Appointment, agreeable to a Regulation in *Ismael's* Will. *Thamas* had neither the Wisdom, the Genius, nor the Valour of his Father: He was an effeminate Prince, and run into all Sorts of Irregularities. Of the three Brothers, *Helcas* had *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia*, with the City of *Babylon*; *Bocram* had *Media*, *Georgia*, and *Albania*; and *Sormisa* had *Parthia*, or the Province of *Chorasan*: But all these Estates were soon reunited to the Crown of *Persia*, by the Death of the several Princes. The first, revolting against *Thamas*, was taken and executed: The second fell a Victim to the King his Brother's Suspicions; and the third died a natural Death, or perhaps with the Fear of being also sacrificed in his Turn.

Tho' *Thamas* seemed immersed wholly in Pleasures, he had yet a warlike Inclination, but wanted the Resolution to engage first in the pursuit of it. The *Turks* soon found him Employment. *Soliman II.* their Emperor at

H

that

His Son  
*Thamas*  
succeeded  
him.

*Soliman II.*  
makes  
War a  
gainst  
him.

that Time, had entertained at his Court a *Persian* Lord, Brother-in-Law of *Thamas*, who was fled thither on some Discontent. This Nobleman was continually stirring up *Soliman* to make War upon *Thamas*; but the Sultan did not seem over-forward for such an Undertaking. At last, by working upon *Ibrahim-Bassa*, the Favourite, he brought it about, and *Soliman* marched against *Persia*. *Thamas*, on his Approach, abandoned the City of *Tauris*; which the other seized at his Arrival. He went next to *Sultania*, which *Tamerlan* had half demolished; but thinking to repose his Troops before he attacked this Place, where *Thamas*, in his Retreat, had left a strong Garrison, a most furious Tempest obliged him to march back. He then turned towards *Affyria*; took the whole Province with the City of *Babylon*; also *Mesopotamia*, *Curdistan*, and *Diarbeck*. He caused himself to be crowned King of *Persia* at *Babylon*, by the Caliph of that City, to whom that Office belonged as Sovereign Pontiff of the *Mahometan* Religion. *Soliman* passed the Winter at *Babylon*, and supplied the Losses in his Army by Recruits that came from *Egypt* and *Syria*. The Spring following he retook the Field, and marched again towards *Tauris*; which *Thamas*, who had returned thither in his Absence, abandoned afresh, and retired as before into the Mountains, waiting only a favourable Opportunity to surprize the *Turks*. In his Retreat, he took care to ravage all the neighbouring Territories, to take from the Enemies all Means of Subsistence.

The Success answered his Wish. The *Turks*, unable to support themselves in *Persia*, pillaged and abandoned *Tauris*, and took the Road back for *Turkey*. *Thamas* now saw it was Time to come forth from the Mountains, and return to *Tauris*, which he found in a wretched Condition. He had a General in his Army named *Deliment*, a Native of *Caramania*, a Man of great Wit and Courage. *Thamas* trusted him with the Command of his Troops, and ordered him to pursue the *Turks*. *Deliment* perfectly well executed his Commission : He overtook the Enemy near *Betlis*, on the Left of the Lake *Van*, and found them in all the Disorder common to a precipitate Retreat : He fell upon them with the utmost Fury, put them almost all to the Sword, and *Soliman* himself had scarce Time to escape. It is said that of 500,000 *Turks*, which had passed the *Euphrates*, scarce 80,000 returned to *Constantinople*. *Soliman* was so enraged at this ill Success, that he put to Death *Ibrahim-Bassa* on his Arrival at that Capital. He kept Possession however of *Affyria* and *Mesopotamia*; but they cost him so dear, that he had rather they had been left unconquered.

*Persia* remained quiet on the Side of the *Turks*, as long as *Soliman* felt the Loss he had sustained : But no sooner were his Affairs re-established, than he made Preparations for renewing the War. The Subject of the Quarrel was, that his Son *Bajazet* having made his Escape, had taken Refuge in the Court of *Thamas*. *Soliman* demanded him back ; but *Thamas* refused to comply, without the Consent of the young Prince



himself. Upon this *Soliman* took the Field, with an Army of 200,000 Men. The *Persian*, dreading the Artillery of the *Turks*, took into his Service 10,000 *Portuguese*; which Nation, at that Time, made a great Figure in the East. They brought with them a very considerable Artillery for that Time, and knew infinitely better how to employ it than the *Turks*. Thus supported, *Thamas* advanced to the Banks of the *Euphrates*, where the Enemy was posted. The two Armies, being in Sight of each, were not long before they came to Blows, when the Valour and Address of the *Portuguese* triumphed over the Obstinacy of the *Turks*. *Soliman* himself was wounded, his whole Army broken and put to the flight, and above 130,000 Men lost on the Field of Battle. *Thamas*, at the Head of his *Persians*, pursued the flying Enemy far, and made a great Slaughter among them. The Sultan, disheartened by this terrible Shock, made Propositions of Peace that were attended to. He required *Thamas* to put *Bajazet* to Death, and this cruel King was not ashamed to violate the Rights of Hospitality: The unhappy Prince was murdered, and his Head sent to *Soliman*.

*Thamas*  
removes  
his Resi-  
dence to  
*Casbin*.

*Thamas* abandoned *Tauris*, where the Kings his Predecessors had resided, and removed his Residence to *Casbin*. The Reason given for it was, that *Tauris* was too near *Ardebil*, which put him in mind of the original Circumstances of *Scheich Aidar* his Grandfather.

His Death. He died in 1576, aged 68 Years; having nominated for his Successor in the Empire  
*Caidar-*

*Caidar-Mirizes* his third Son, then only 17 Years old. This Choice however did not seem equitable to the Grandees, who besides had no Esteem for *Caidar-Mirizes*: They paid no Respect therefore to the last Will of their Monarch, but made a Tender of the Crown to his eldest Son *Codabende*, who was retired into the Province of *Chorasan*. *Codabende* refused the Royal Dignity, which was then offered to his Brother *Ismael*, who accepted it. He was 43 Years of Age when they brought him out of Prison to place him on a Throne. This Prince, whose Father had confined him upon some Suspicions he had conceived of his Fidelity, had all those warlike Qualities which dazzle the Eyes of Military Men. He had distinguished himself in several Rencounters with the *Turks*; and this Valour of his was what had made him suspected by his Father. He had formerly appeared gentle and humane; but his long Imprisonment had so soured his Temper, that he was become like a Beast of Prey. No sooner was he on the Throne, than he distinguished his Cruelty by the Death of *Caidar-Mirizes* his Brother. He afterwards took it in his Brain to pass for Dead, in order to know who were disaffected to him. The Stratagem succeeded, and no sooner was the Report of his Death noised abroad, but those who did not love him began to blacken his Memory. He had his Spies in every Quarter, who brought him Advice of what Numbers of People said concerning him. As many as possible of the Accused were arrested. Abundance escaped into the Extremity of the Kingdom, whither *Ismael* pursued

His Son  
*Ismael*  
succeeds  
him.

them with a Body of Cavalry. The *Turks*, who had Garisons on that Side, imagined an Excursion was designed against them. They put themselves in a Posture of Defence, taking this March of *Ismael* for a Declaration of War. That Prince, seeing himself unable to maintain a domestick and foreign War at the same Time, dispatched the most suspected of his Subjects by the Hands of his Executioners, and then prepared to attack the *Turks*. He was prevented however by a Dose of Poison, which his Sister *Petiaconcona* gave him at the Request of his Nobles.

He is poisoned.

*Codabende* elected.

*Ismael II.* was no sooner dead, but the *Persian* Lords sent a Deputation to *Codabende*, to intreat him to accept the Crown. He refused it at first, but at last yielded to the Instances of the Deputies. He stained with Blood the Beginning of his Reign, by putting to Death three of his Brothers that had fled towards the Frontiers of *Turkey*, whom he prevailed on to return by his fair Promises. A King who puts to Death his near Relations, at the Expence of his royal Word, doubtless cannot be a very good Man: But we must not expect the most delicate Moral from these *Mahometans*.

*Codabende* made War against the *Turks*, and with Advantage. He died in 1585, leaving three Sons, of whom *Emir-Hemse*, the eldest, succeeded him. He had reigned but a few Months, when his Brother *Ismael* assassinated him, and ascended the Throne. *Ismael* had no sooner got the Reins of Government, but he sought to get rid of *Abas* his third Brother. But the Governor of that young Prince, who foresaw his own Life dependent

His Death.  
His eldest  
Son succeeds;  
is murdered  
by *Ismael*,  
who ascends  
the Throne.

depended on that of his Pupil, resolved to prevent the ill Designs of the King, and engaged several Grandees in his Party.

One of *Ismael's* Valet-de-Chambres, prevailed on by Bribes, took upon him to rid them of his Master, and one Day cut his Throat as he was shaving him. The Conspirators, who were present at this Execution, immediately dispatched the Valet, lest he should discover the Authors of the Treason.

A Valet-de-Chambre cuts his Throat.

*Abas*, or *Schah-Abas*, surnamed *the Great*, on account both of his long Reign, and the great Things he performed, succeeded his Brother *Ismael III*, being no more than eighteen Years of Age. He had very great Qualities, and might have passed as well for a good and wise King, as for a great Conqueror, if he had not been guilty of Cruelty and Ingratitude towards *Murschild-Kuli-Kan* his Governor, to whom he owed his Crown; and whom he unmercifully murdered, because this unhappy Man was too free with him in making Remonstrances concerning his Conduct. He was not even contented with this, but cut off his whole Family, that he might be safe from their just Resentment. This Rigour gave the Grandees sufficiently to understand, that they had little Confidence to expect from a Prince who seemed resolved to govern alone, and only laughed at the Advice of his Ministers.

Accession of *Schah Abas* to the Throne of *Persia*.

The Ill-becoming of his Reign.

*Schah-Abas* wholly gave way to his warlike Inclination. He formed a Design of reconquering all the Provinces that *Persia* had lost since the Reign of *Ismael I*. He began with the *Usbeck Tartars*, who had fallen upon the Province of *Chorasan*, of which himself had been Governor in his Minority. This

He gives himself up to his warlike Humour.

Pro-

Province, only a small Part of which now belongs to *Persia*, is situated on the South-East of the *Caspian-Sea*. *Abas* forced *Abdulla*, Prince of the *Usbecks*, to retire into \**Mesched*, at the Extremity of the Province. The Year following he defeated the same Prince, took him and his Children Prisoners, and caused them all to be beheaded. The Consequence of this Victory was the Reduction of all *Chorasán*, which *Schah-Abas* re-established in good Order and Security. He then declared War against the *Turks*, from whom he had much more to re-conquer than from the *Tartars*. They had taken from *Persia* a Tract of Land of above 150 Leagues in Breadth, from the Western Coast of the *Caspian* quite to the *Black Sea*; and as much in Length, computing from *Tauris* to the Extremities of the Kingdom of *Caket*.

His Con-  
quests.

*Schah Abas* recovered all these vast Countries out of the Hands of the *Turks*. He did yet more, and even conquered a great Number of Places upon the *Black-Sea*; among which was a Port near *Trebizonde*. He did the same from the Mouth of the *Euphrates* to the *Red-Sea*, and along the Coast of that down to the Ocean; taking, among other Towns in *Arabia*, that of *Medina*, so famous for being the Birth-place of their false Prophet. Upon the *Persian Gulph* he took *Balsora*, wrested the Isle of *Ormuz* from the *Portuguese*, and much lessened the Power of that Nation in *Asia*.

\* This Place is become famous in *Persia* for the Pilgrimage which the same *Schah-Abas* established thither; which serves the *Persians* instead of one to *Mecca*.

After



After having thus extended the Boundaries, he began to think of reforming the Interior of his Empire. Many of the great Men in *Persia*, during the Troubles of the Kingdom, had found the Secret to get in Possession of sovereign Power. *Schah Abas* undertook to reduce them to Subjection, which he accomplished by the Depth of his Politicks, as much as by the respectful Awe that his Exploits had impressed on the Minds of all Men. In a Word, he established such a despotick Power, as had not been seen a long Time before in *Persia*. He re- forms his Kingdom.

As he grew old, he became suspicious; and the End of his Life was again sullied with the innocent Blood he caused to be spilt. He imagined that his Sons had a Design to depose him, and in that Idea had the Eyes of the two youngest put out, reserving *Sephi-Mirza*, the eldest, for his Successor: But afterwards, entertaining some Suspicions against him, as ill-grounded as the former, he had him assassinated. It was not long before he repented of this Cruelty, and grew so melancholic, that he would see nobody. Eleven Days he shut himself up, weeping and lamenting the Death of a Son whom he so tenderly loved, and yet whose Murderer he had been. *Sephi-Mirza* left a Son, named *Sain Mirza*. *Schah-Abas* adopted him for his Successor, that he might in some Sort repair the Injury done to the Father; and when some of his Lords represented to him, that, according to the Predictions of Astrologers, if *Sain Mirza* ascended the Throne, he would not reign above three Months; *What signifies it*, answered the King, *if he reigns but* Grows suspicious and cruel in his old Age. Has his eldest Son assassinated.

*but three Days, provided he reigns, and that I have the Consolation to leave a young Shoot from my Son Sephi-Mirza upon the Throne!*

**His Death.** *Schah Abbas* died a few Days after, *An. 1629*, in the sixty-third Year of his Age, and the forty-fifth of his Reign. He breathed his last at *Ferhabad*, a City he had built in the Province of *Mazanderan*, on the South of the *Caspian-Sea*, and where he delighted to reside more than in any other Place in his Kingdom.

**His Grandson succeeds him.** He required his Successor to assume the Name of *Sephi*, in Memory of his Son whom he had so unjustly put to Death.

*Schah Sephi* surpassed all his Predecessors in Cruelty. He committed so many Outrages, that it was at length resolved to get rid of him. This Resolution was taken even in his *Haram*, among his Wives and Concubines. It being agreed to do it by Poison, they gave him a Dose of it, which not being strong enough, he recovered after some Months Disorder. No sooner was he well, but he assiduously sought out the Authors of his intended Murder, and made so exact a Scrutiny, that the whole Scene was laid open. Then were seen the most severe Marks of his Cruelty. He ordered a great Pit to be dug in the Gardens of his *Haram*, in which forty Women were buried alive, among whom was his Aunt, and some say even his own Mother. This barbarous Prince had hardly one good Quality. He was rather savage than valiant: For he suffered the two most important Places in his Kingdom, *Bagdat* in the West, and *Candahar* in the East, to be taken from him.

Though poisoned, he does not die of it.

*Schah*

*Schah Sephi* died at last in the Year 1642, His Death. which was the twelfth of his Reign.

*Abas II.* succeeded him. Though he was *Abas II.* an only Son, he had narrowly escaped being succeeds the Victim of his Father's Cruelty. *Schah* him. *Sephi* was a Lover of Wine, and when he was drunk would give out the most bloody Orders. One Day when he had drank freely, he ordered a Eunuch of his Court to apply the Searing-Iron to his Son's Eyes. His Intention was, that the Iron should be hot: But the Eunuch reflecting, that the King had no other Son to succeed him, and that besides his Orders were not explicit, he took Pity of How he the young Prince, and only made use of the escapes his cold Iron. He let the Prince afterwards into Father's the whole Secret; who so well counterfeited Orders for Blindness, that the King was deceived. At burning last, when he drew near his End, *Sephi* seemed very uneasy that he should leave no Successor. The Eunuch, who observed his Discontent, informed him of all he had done to preserve his Son. The King sent for him instantly; declared him his Successor; and the Pleasure he conceived to see him sound and perfect was so great, that it was thought out his Eyes. to prolong his Life till the next Day.

The *Persians* had no Room to complain His Character. of their new King, who governed with great Moderation, and was one of the best of all the Race of the *Sophies*. Being but thirteen Years old when he began to reign, he committed the Cares of Government to his Mother, assisted by *Athematdoulet*, an old Man of near eighty, in whom that Princess had great Confidence. This venerable Minister was at last killed by one of the Lords of the Court;

Under-  
takes a  
War a-  
gainst the  
Mogul.

Court; and though the King was but nineteen Years old, he then took the Resolution to reign alone. He distinguished his Reign by a just War which he undertook against the Mogul, to whom his Father *Sephi* had been obliged to make a Cession of *Candahar*: He retook this Place, and maintained it against all the Efforts of the Mogul to dispossess him of it again. History gives many Instances of *Abas* the Second's Love of Justice, one of which I shall mention, as it deserves a Place here for its Singularity.

An *Armenian* coming into a *Persian* Mosque, took up one of those Fish which the *Mahometans* esteem sacred, and which they keep in a Basin just by the Mosque. A *Persian*, who saw this Action of the *Armenians*, killed him upon the Spot, and obtained his Pardon of the Pontiff. *Abas*, hearing of the Affair, sent for the High-Priest, reprimanded him severely, ridiculed the Reasons he alledged, condemned him to make a pecuniary Recompence to the Family of the Deceased, and ordered the *Persian* to be executed who committed the Murder.

His Death.

This Prince's Life was too short for the Happiness and Glory of *Persia*; for he died in 1666, at about thirty-eight Years of Age.

*Mirza-Sephi*, his eldest Son, elected by the Grandees, and takes the Name of *Soliman*.

He left two Sons. *Sephi Mirza*, the eldest, was twenty Years old; and *Hamzeh-Mirza*, the youngest, only eight Years. As he did not nominate either for his Successor, the Ministers and Generals supplied that Defect, and elected *Sephi Mirza*, who afterwards changed his Name for that of *Soleiman*, or *Soliman*.

This

This new King had none of his Father's His Character. good Qualities. He committed such enormous Cruelties, that one of his Lords used to say, *He never came out of his Presence without feeling his Head, to know if he had got it upon his Shoulders.* He had a prodigious Strength, and would squeeze together Goblets of Gold with his Hands, that were as thick as a Crown-piece. But this Quality, which might indeed have made an excellent Porter, was not sufficient to make a great King. His Sentiments were never proportioned to his Dignity. When those about him represented what he had to fear from the *Turks*, who, after having beat the Christians, would fall upon his Dominions, unless he kept upon his Guard, his only Answer was, "that provided they left him *Ispahan*, he did not care what became of the rest."

He lived too long for the Benefit of *Persia*, which began in his Reign to decline apace.

He died in 1694, at the Age of forty-eight, of which he had been King twenty-eight Years. He left two Sons, the eldest of whom, named *Abas*, was handsome and well made, a Lover of violent Exercises, and of every thing that related to War; the other deformed and homely, of a soft and humble Disposition, much addicted to Retirement, and spending his whole Time in reading the *Koran*.

*Soliman* would not decide between his two Sons, but told the Lords of his Court, that if they approv'd of an active King, who should keep them always in the Field, they would do well to elect *Mirza Abas*: But if they preferred a pacifick Monarch, their Choice must

He nominates neither to succeed him.  
The Grandees chuse *Hussain*.



must fall upon *Hussein*. The *Grande*es, already accustomed to govern, without Difficulty fixed on the last, notwithstanding the fine Qualities, and incontestable Right of the other.

He leaves the Government to his Eunuchs, who divide into two Factions.

*Hussein*, naturally inclined to Indolence, never concerned himself about the State, but left it to the Government of his Eunuchs. These divided themselves into two Factions, distinguished by Nature, that of the *Blacks* and that of the *Whites*; committed innumerable Exactions, and put the whole Kingdom in Disorder, by the Hatred with which they pursued each other. The People groaned under the Taxes which these mutilated Slaves continually introduced, and every one wished to see this Tyranny come to an End, by what Means soever it was brought about.

Origin of the *Aghwans* Revolt.

Such was the Disposition of the *Persians*, when the *Aghwans* began to make themselves formidable. These People were a Remnant of those antient Inhabitants of *Schirwan*, who gave *Tamerlan* so much Trouble. Expelled from their antient Seat by that Conqueror, they came to inhabit about *Candahar*, at the other Extremity of *Persia*, where they lived under Tents in the Manner of the *Tartars*. One of the Chiefs among them, by Name *Mir-weis*, that is *Lord Weis*, was employed, on Account of his Riches, in collecting the King's Revenue. He was polite, generous, obliging, and affable; adored by those of his own Nation. The Prince of *Georgia*, whom the King of *Persia* had sent Governor of *Candahar*, reflecting, that in the present State of the Kingdom, there was every thing to fear from so turbulent a Nation as that of the

The Character of *Mir-weis* one of their Chiefs. The Prince of *Georgia* trusts him.

the *Aghwans*, with a Man of *Mir-weis's* Genius at their Head, however despicable this Nation might otherwise appear on Account of Numbers and Wealth, dispatched *Mir-weis* to *Ispahan*, on pretence of his executing there a Commission which related to the Court. The Governor, at the same Time, sent in Writing his just Apprehensions of this Man. They placed People about him, who, under pretence of keeping him Company, were to observe all his Motions. *Mir-weis*, who perhaps had never thought it possible for a private Man, like himself, to undertake any Thing against his Sovereign, began to regard Things in another Light, when he saw the Conduct of the King and his Ministers, and the Discontent of the People. In the mean time his Liberality and polite Behaviour gained him the Hearts of the Courtiers, and soon introduced him to a considerable Share of the royal Favour. He was no longer looked upon as a suspected Person, but intrusted with all the Confidence possible. S<sup>ends him</sup> to Court.

*Mir-weis* played his Part so well, that he was sent back into his own Country with the royal Vest, and more ample Powers than before. It was in the Year 1709 that he returned thus to *Candahar*, in a Condition that enabled him to laugh at the Prince of *Georgia's* Suspicions. He was received by his Countrymen with inexpressible Joy; and having summoned the Chief of them together, he let them into his Designs, and the Facility of putting them in Execution. As soon as he saw them come into his Sentiments, he put his Hand to the Work; drew

*Mir-weis's* Projects.

He seizes together his *Aghwans* under Arms, and in the Night put the Prince, and the whole Garrison of *Candabar*, to the Sword. He then harangued his *Aghwans*, and shewed them Patents from the Doctors of *Mecca* in favour of his Projects, which he had found the Secret to obtain in a Pilgrimage he had made to that City. These Patents, or *Fetja's*, removed all their Scruples, and *Mir-weis* was upon the Spot declared Prince of *Candabar*, with an absolute Power to make Peace or War.

He imposes on the Court of *Ispahan* concerning this Revolution, *Mir-weis* knew very well that what he had done must embroil him with the Court of *Ispahan*; and not thinking himself yet strong enough to withstand the numerous Armies of the King, he wrote to his Friends at Court that the Insurrection at *Candabar* had been occasioned by the Prince of *Georgia's* Debauches, and the Extravagancies of his *Georgian* Soldiers. The Court either feigned to give credit to all he said, or actually did so; but more authentick Relations soon arrived, which set the Conduct of *Mir-weis* in a clear Light. A formidable Army was then got ready, composed of *Georgians* and *Persians*, to go and reduce these Rebels to Reason. *Mir-weis*, perceiving himself yet insufficient to meet so great a Force in the Field, shut himself up in *Candabar*; cut down all the Corn, Plants, and Fruits in the Neighbourhood, and brought them into the City, to take away all Means of Subsistence from the royal Army. This Project succeeded; Part of the *Persian* Army, engaged in a Country where they found no Provisions, deserted, and the Remainder was obliged to return home.

It

It was a long Time before the Court could recover these Losses; and while it was using all possible Means, *Mir-weis* made Incursions upon the Provinces that were next to *Candahar*, brought off a World of Booty, and so accustomed his *Agbwans* to this Way of pillaging in Parties, that they desired nothing better.

The Court was not a little at a Loss in what Manner to proceed. The Ministry was divided, the Finances exhausted, and the Troops disheartened. *Mir-weis* would have cut them out Work enough, if Death had not surpris'd him at *Candahar* in the Midst of dies. his good Fortune, when he had full Hopes of soon arriving at something more considerable. The *Agbwans* had so much Veneration for him, His Brother that they elected his Brother in his Place, because of his Son's Minority. ed Prince

The new Prince of *Candahar* was of a Temper quite opposite to that of his Brother: He had little or no Ambition; and whether that were the Reason, or whether he despair'd with a Handful of Men to withstand the whole Power of the King of *Persia*, he concluded that the best Way was to procure a Peace of that Monarch, upon solid and advantageous Terms. He opened his Mind to the most prudent of the *Agbwans*, who came into his Opinion. A Deputation was getting ready to send to *Ispahan*, to negotiate this great Affair. In the mean while *Magmud*, the eldest Son of *Mir-weis*, a Youth of about sixteen, brought up amidst the Din of War, and inured to Murders and Robberies, discovered somewhat of his Uncle's Designs. His Character. He waited till Night came on, went and

He is assassinated by *Magmud*, who is declared Prince of the *Aghwans*. assassinated the pacific Prince, and immediately founded an Alarm. The *Aghwans* assembling, *Magmud* declared what he had done, justified himself as well as possible, and told them, that if they would chuse him for their Prince, he would lead them to the very Gates of *Ispahan*. The Courage of this young Man made him admired by the Populace, and he was instantly declared Prince of the *Aghwans*.

The Court embarrassed. The *Persian* Court, which had indolently relied upon the pacific Sentiments of *Mirweis's* Brother, heard of this Revolution with inexpressible Concern. It was in no Condition to reduce the Rebels by Force of Arms. *Candabar* was above 200 Leagues distant; and it was no easy Matter to march an Army so far. Besides, the Troops were discouraged at their not being regularly paid. On all these Accounts *Magmud* had the more Time to strengthen his Party.

The *Aghwans* divided in their Religion. In the Neighbourhood of *Candabar* is a Province called *Hazaray*, inhabited also by *Aghwans*. These two People, tho' originally of the same Nation, were of different religious Sentiments. The *Aghwans* of *Hazaray* were *Rafi*, or *Mahometans* according to the *Persian* Rite; those of *Candabar*, *Sunni*, or *Mahometans* of the *Turkish* Institution.

*Magmud* undertakes to unite them. *Magmud* undertook to re-unite these two Nations, who hated each other mortally. He made use first of Argument with the *Aghwans* of *Hazaray*, to bring them into Union with their Brethren: But finding them obstinate against all Reasoning, he compelled them to it by Force.

This



This Re-union threw the Court of *Ispahan* into great Consternation. It grew sensible at last of the pressing Necessity to oppose the swelling Torrent, and resolved to send an Army to chastise the Rebels. *Sephi-Kouli-Kan*, who had been Chief-Justice, was chose to command it. He had acquitted himself of his former Office with an Integrity that drew on him the Esteem of all Men; but for this of General, he refused to accept it. They made use of a Stratagem to force his Compliance: They offered it to his Son, a Youth of only nineteen Years old, who having accepted the Honour, *Sephi-Kouli-Kan* thought it his Duty to bear him Company, to assist him at least with his Counsels.

Sends an Army against the Rebels, and chuses *Sephi-Kouli-Kan* to command it.

*Magmud*, informed of the Measures that were taken against him, thought it not prudent to expect the Enemies Army in *Candahar*. He knew it consisted of only 16,000 Men; and tho' those were all select Soldiers, he apprehended nothing from such a Number. The two Armies soon met, and the young *Persian* General lost his Life in this his first Engagement. His Father no sooner heard the melancholy News, but he desperately threw himself into the thickest of the Battle, and there fell.

The Court had been so used to Disgraces, that it was not much alarmed at this. The chief Difficulty lay in the Choice of another General. The *Athematdoulet* offered his Services; but they were rejected, upon a Representation to the King, how dangerous it was to give the Command of his Army to a Man of so great Credit. He proposed his Brother-in-Law, *Lust-Ali-Kan*, who was

accepted; a Man of much Spirit, and who had a Genius equal to the greatest Things. He begun his Command with defeating the *Aghwans*, obliging them to raise the Siege of *Kirman*, and prepared himself to besiege *Candahar*, when the Eunuchs and Grandees, jealous of his Glory, prevailed on the King to have him arrested, and got his Brother, the *Athematdoulet*, deprived of Sight. The Army, enraged to see a General thus disgraced, who alone was able to restore the Affairs of the Kingdom, to a Man disbanded of their own accord. From that Moment the Affairs of *Hussein* grew every Day worse and worse. *Magmud*, who had now nothing more to fear from the Wisdom and Valour of *Lust-Ali-Kan*, re-appeared in the Field, and even dared to lay Siege to *Ispahan*, which he took more thro' the Jealousies and Divisions of the King's Ministers, than by his own Strength.

*Schah Hussein* resigns the Throne of *Persia* to the Rebel *Magmud*.

The *Aghwans* so closely beleaguered this Capital, that a general Famine was soon felt there: And the unhappy *Schah Hussein*, beholding the Misery of his People, resolved to surrender up his Throne to *Magmud*. With this View he left *Ispahan*, and went to the Rebel at *Ferbabad*, after procuring a Safe-guard for himself and Children. *Magmud* received him with the Air of a Conqueror; but after the Ceremony of Abdication was over, he affected to shew him all Manner of Respect.

*Mir-Magmud*, now King of *Persia*, sent a Detachment from his Army to go and take Possession of *Ispahan*. He afterwards entered it himself in Triumph, and took Possession of

of the Royal Palace. Provisions from that Time began to flow into the Capital in such Abundance, that the same Measure of Flour, which during the Siege was sold for 100 Crowns, might have been bought for one. Peace and Plenty visibly revived throughout the Kingdom. The new King begun his Reign with the Punishment of those who had been Traitors to his Predecessor. His Administration at first was very mild: But some Months after, reflecting that tho' he was Master of the old King, and the rest of the Royal Family, Prince *Thamas*, a Son of the deposed Monarch, was yet wanting, he cast about him how to secure the young Prince, who was then busy at *Casbin*, in the Celebration of his Nuptials. *Magmud* sent thither 8000 select Men, under the Conduct of a General in whom he had great Confidence. At the Approach of these Forces, *Thamas* retired with Precipitation; and the Inhabitants of *Casbin*, destitute of all Succour, received *Magmud's* Troops into their City: But the General going about to plunder the Citizens, they desperately took Arms, and killed above 4000 *Agbwans*. The rest fled, and so many of them retired towards *Candahar*, that not 1000 returned to *Ispahan*. This was at the Beginning of the Year 1723. If *Thamas* had then been at the Head of any considerable Force, he might have greatly distressed the Usurper; but, unhappily, he was not in a Condition for any Enterprize.

*Magmud*  
attempts  
to secure  
Prince  
*Thamas*.

*Magmud* had Time enough to look about him: The Affair at *Casbin* gave him to understand what he had to fear even in his Capital, and this Reflection made him cruel.

He

He caused a general Massacre of the Nobility and their Children, and of the principal Citizens. Three Thousand of the old King's Guards, who had sworn Allegiance to *Magmud*, were put to the Sword in one Day by the Tyrant's Order; who thinking himself not yet safe, dispersed the rest of the Inhabitants of *Ispahan* into the remote Parts of the Kingdom, and re-peopled the City with Strangers of all Countries.

Prince *Thamas* in the mean Time had retired to *Tauris*, and was there acknowledged King of *Persia*. His Authority did not extend beyond the District of that City, but then he had an Army of brave Soldiers, all hearty and resolute. He concluded that the *Aghwans* would not suddenly be in a Condition to drive him from this Post; and in Fact *Magmud* was too much weakened, by the Losses he had lately sustained against the *Arabians*, with whom he had been engaged in a destructive War. But while the Prince thus imagined himself secure, the *Turks*, who had just then reduced the whole Province of *Georgia*, advanced towards *Tauris*, with a Design to penetrate into *Persia* by the Taking of that City. *Thamas* had recourse to the *Armenians* of the Mountains, who sent him a Supply of good Troops; and with this Reinforcement he met the *Turks*, gave them Battle, and won a most signal Victory. Twenty Thousand *Turks* lay dead on the Field; the rest were routed, and all their Baggage fell into the Hands of the Victor.

Mean while the Usurper *Magmud* was returned from the Siege of *Yezd*, which he had been obliged to raise, after losing a Multi-  
tude

tude of Men. This Disgrace, tho' a very common one in the Course of War, had such surprising Effects on *Magmud's* Mind, that he lost his Appetite, and soon after fell into a Delirium. What completely disordered his Brain, was the Escape of *Mirza-Sephi*, *Schah Hussein's* eldest Son, who having found means to get out of the *Haram*, fled into the Province of *Bachtiaci*. The Usurper, no more himself after this News, caused above 100 Princes of the Royal Family to be butchered in *Ispahan*; ordered three venerable old Men, the Uncles of *Schah Hussein*, to be brought into his Apartment, and hew'd them in Pieces with his own Sabre: In short, he was like a wild Beast, and in the Fits of his Distemper would even lay violent Hands on his best Friends. The Loss of his Senses was followed by a Palsy, and the Rotting-away of his Limbs.

*Magmud's* Mind, and afterwards his Body, disordered by Crosses.

The *Aghwans*, seeing they had no more to hope from *Magmud*, elected *Aszraf*, or *Eschref*, according to the *English* Pronunciation, to be their Chief. He was Son of that Brother of *Mir-weis*, whom *Magmud* had assassinated, and consequently *Magmud's* Cousin-German. They took him from a Dungeon to place him on the Throne, and he soon answered the Idea which People had conceived of him. When he saw himself raised to the supreme Dignity, his first Care was to punish his Father's Murderers. His Orders were executed, and *Magmud*, who then languished under a doleful Distemper, fell a Victim to his Vengeance. *Magmud* was but 26 Years old. His Head was carried to the Usurper, who soon gave other

The *Aghwans* elected another Chief.

Marks



The Per-  
fidy of *Ef-  
chref*,  
*Magmud's*  
Successor

Marks of his Cruelty and Infincerity. . He wrote to Prince *Thamas*, that if he would come to a certain Place without Guards, he would meet him in the same Manner, that they might agree together on Terms of Accommodation. *Thamas* went towards the Rendezvous with the utmost Confidence, and without Attendants: But happily he heard on the Road, that the perfidious *Efchref* had such a Multitude in his Train, as might well pass for an Army; which made him instantly turn back to join his Forces.

The *Muscovites* and  
*Turks* take  
Advantages of the  
Troubles  
in *Persia*.

The Kingdom of *Persia* was in too great an Agitation for her Neighbours to look quietly on. They took Advantage of these Convulsions; the *Muscovites* by seizing on all the Western Coasts of the *Caspian Sea*; and the *Turks* by invading it with three Armies, in three different Places. These latter took *Erivan* by Assault, got Possession of *Tauris*, and then ventured to march towards *Ispahan*. *Achmet*, Bassa of *Bagdat*, advanced even into the *Hurmavat*, within three Days Journey of that Capital. He obliged the *Bachtylians*, who live in Tents, to retire into the Mountains with their Families and Cattle. The *Turks* were obliged to pass thro' the narrow Defiles of these Mountains, from which it was no easy Matter to force the *Bachtylians*. He was deliberating what Step to take, when News came that the *Arabians* were making Incurfions to the very Gates of *Bagdat*; upon which he instantly abandoned his Design against *Ispahan*, to go and repulse those Outlaws. *Efchref*, delivered from the Terrors of a Siege, turned his whole Thoughts to the securing himself on

on the Throne. He could have been very glad of an Accommodation with Prince *Thamas*; but after having forfeited his Faith to that Prince, there was no Room for new Overtures. He thought it his Business then to make Peace with the *Turks*, that he might more easily subdue the Prince; and with that View he sent an Officer of his Army to *Constantinople*, in the Quality of Ambassador. As this Officer was a Soldier of Fortune, very unfit for such a Negotiation, one *Emanuel Cheriman* an *Armenian*, the Head of the *Cheriman* Family, which was the richest and most considerable in all *Zulpha*, was joined with him in this Commission.

The Ambassador arrived at *Constantinople* on the 18th of *January* 1726. He was admitted to an Audience of the Grand Vizir, in Spite of all the Efforts of the *Russian* Ambassador to prevent it. The *Ottoman* Prime Minister received him at first in a favourable Manner; but the Ambassador beginning his Harangue with saying, *The Grand Sophi my Master*, the Vizir, who would not treat upon such Terms, as if between Equal and Equal, broke off the Conference, and all the Address of the *Persian* could never obtain another Audience.

*Eschref* proposes a Peace with the *Turk*.

Why he did not succeed.

Hitherto there had never been any open Rupture between the *Turks* and the *Aghwans*; but from this Time they looked on each other as Enemies. The *Porte* gave Orders for a considerable Re-inforcement to march into *Persia*, where nothing less than the Taking of *Ispahan* was proposed. *Eschref*, informed of the Intentions of the *Turks*, made such a Deso-

K lation

lation in the Neighbourhood round about, that he utterly destroyed all Means of Subsistence. The *Turks* received two or three Shocks on the Neck of one another, and at last were obliged to retire into *Georgia*, to recruit their shattered Forces.

The *Ottoman* Court talks in a lower Strain.

The *Ottoman* Court now talked no longer in the same haughty Tone: She gave *Eschref* to understand, that she was not averse to a Treaty of Peace, if, to save the Sultan's Honour, he would make the first Propositions. *Eschref* did not think it worth while to dispute about Punctilios; he complied with what was required of him, and in return obtained an advantageous Peace, at least as much so as his Affairs could give him Room to expect.

*Eschref* has another Enemy to fear.

*Eschref* now thought himself fully established on the Throne of *Persia*; but found he was widely mistaken. There was at *Candahar* one of the Sons\* of *Magmud*, who after the Death of his Father had been elected Prince of that Place, and of the Nation of *Aghwans*. He bore with Impatience the Fortune of *Eschref*; made Preparations against him; and as soon as he saw himself in a Condition to

\* The Author speaks of a Brother of *Magmud* soon after, who was Prince of *Candahar*: It must be the same Brother he means here; for *Magmud*, who died at twenty-six Years of Age, could not leave a Son to make such a Figure just after his Decease. The Hurry of the Press seems to have occasioned several such little Mistakes in the *French*, some of which we have corrected without mentioning them.

attack him, began his March to dispute with him the Crown of *Persia*. He had at first some Success; but was soon obliged to return back to *Candahar*.

The Party of Prince *Thamas* now strengthened every Day. A Journey which he had taken into *Indostan*, and the Alliance he had contracted with the Mogul, had helped to re-establish his Affairs. And to complete his good Fortune, the Prince of *Candahar*, despairing ever to drive *Eschref* from the Throne, and chusing rather that the Crown should return to the lawful Claimant, than continue on the Usurper's Head, made an Accommodation with Prince *Thamas*, and served him ever after like a good and faithful Vassal. But what chiefly contributed to place this Prince upon the Throne of his Ancestors, was the surprising Valour and consummate Prudence of THAMAS KOULI KAN, the Man whose Name has been so loudly resounded, and whose History I have undertaken to write. Before I treat particularly of his Person and Actions, I must add a Word or two more of the *Persians*.

The *Aghwans*, being Masters of the Capital and other principal Cities of the Kingdom, had reversed all the Ranks that were established among the seven Nations who make up the Inhabitants of modern *Persia*. These Ranks are so ordered, that every one of an inferior Nation is obliged to pay his Respects to one of a superior, where-ever he meets him. The Ceremony consists in the Inferior's making a full Stop, with his Arms across, as if he waited for the Orders of his Superior; who, by saying *Selâm Eleik*, seems

Prince  
*Thamas's*  
Success.

to permit him to continue his Way. Every one who is deficient, either in this, or any other Point of Formality, to one of a superior Degree, is punishable according to the Rigour of the Laws.

By an Edict published by the *Aghwans* at *Ispahan*, and thro' all the Kingdom, the Ranks had been regulated in the following Manner.

Regulation of Ranks among the several Nations in *Persia*.

1. The *Aghwans*, as Conquerors of the Country. 2. The *Armenians*, who are dispersed in great Numbers all over the Kingdom. 3. The *Dergesins*, whom one of *Magnud's* Generals brought from one of the Extremities of *Persia* to people the Capital. They are of the Sect of *Sunni*, like the *Turks* and *Aghwans*. 4. The *Multani*, or *Multoni*, originally sprung from *Multan* in *India*. They are the greatest Merchants of *Ispahan*; *Banians* by Religion; very rich, and great Usurers. 5. The *Guebres*, or *Gaurs*, descended from the antient *Persians*, who to this Day adore Fire, and are the mortal Enemies of the modern *Persians*. *Schah-Soliman* had begun to compel them to live like *Mahometans*, and *Schah-Husseïn* had used them yet more rigorously. This was the Source of their Hatred. The *Aghwans* restored them to their antient Liberty. 6. The *Jews*. 7. The natural *Persians*. Such was the Order which the *Aghwans* thought fit to establish.

Let us now return to THAMAS KOULI KAN.

Many Nations having adopted this extraordinary Man, it would be difficult to decide what was his native Country. Sometimes he has passed for a *Swiss*, at others for a *Hollander*,



lander, an *Englishman*, a *Frenchman*, a *Benedictine* stripped of his Hablit. I am sorry I cannot give my Reader an infallible Decision on so controverted a Point : But, to make him some amends, I will here insert a Letter written on Account of a *German* Narrative, published by an Author who has thought fit to conceal his Name.

SIR,

“ IT is with Pleasure that I remember your Letter Goodness, in having communicated to me so many curious Remarks that you had made upon the People of the East, in your Travels thro’ *Asia*, and during your Abode in *Africa*. I think it my Duty, in Return, to send you some Anecdotes concerning the famous *Kouli-Kan*. I have just extracted them from a Relation published lately in *Germany*, by an Author who has not given us his Name ; but who plainly enough insinuates that he was charged with many important Negotiations, as well in *Persia* as in *Tartary* ; and on that Account he seems to deserve a much greater Share of Credit in what he says of the Extraction of this great General, than any Thing that has been published on that Head, without Foundation, in *France*, *England*, or *Holland*. concern-  
ing the  
Origin of  
*Kouli Kan*.

It is about thirteen Years ago, that *Thamas Causoli Kan* (for so it is that his Name is written and pronounced in all the Country) began to make himself known in *Persia*, tho’ he had resided in that Kingdom a long Time before. He had passed thro’ all the Degrees of a Soldier, and his Valour had already advanced him to the Post of a Captain, before

he engaged in the Interest of *Schah-Thamas*, at a Time when that Prince, to withdraw himself from the Power of the Rebel *Mir-weis*, and afterwards from that of *Eschref*, had taken Refuge at *Ardewil*.

The unfortunate *Sophi* well knew the great Abilities of *Causoli-Kan*, and believed he could do nothing better, than give him, with the greatest Confidence, the Command of his Army. It was evident from the Consequence that this Prince was not deceived ; since the new General, with a select Body of Troops, entirely defeated the numerous Army of the Rebel *Eschref*, whom he took Prisoner and beheaded, after having put out his Eyes: A Punishment which that Usurper had but too much deserved, for his criminal Boldness, and unheard-of Barbarities. After so distinguished a Victory, *Causoli-Kan* conducted *Schah-Thamas* in Triumph to *Ispahan*, and re-established him upon the Throne of his Ancestors, about eight Years ago. The People, on this Occasion, gave extraordinary Signals of Joy. The Name of *Causoli-Kan* resounded on every Side, and was by so much the more grateful to the Populace, as it signifies in the *Persian* Language *Prince Deliverer*. The *Sophi* had also honoured him with his own Name of *Thamas*. Thus was the Fame of this great General repeated every where, and always accompanied with a thousand and a thousand Benedictions. But in order firmly to establish the Crown upon the Head of his Sovereign, he was yet to engage in very great Enterprizes.

The grand Point was to extinguish every Seed of Rebellion, especially in the Province  
of

of *Candahar*, whence sprung the Usurpers *Mir-weis* and *Eschref*, and where still remained great Numbers of their Relations, and chief Accomplices. It was necessary to re-conquer the Province of *Surat* from the Grand Mogul, who had become Master of it during the Troubles, and who had supported the Usurpers in their Revolt; to oppose the Progress of the *Turks* and other neighbouring Powers, who, in Emulation of one another, had made Acquisitions upon this desolate Kingdom of whatever was for their Advantage.

*Causoli-Kan* took the two first Expeditions on himself, and left the third to the Sophi. Victory followed the Steps of this gallant General. The Province of *Candahar* was soon compelled to return to the Sophi's Obedience, and the Grand Mogul was obliged to restore all that he had taken.

After having issued the necessary Orders for the Security of the Countries he had newly recovered, his whole Thoughts were bent on succouring the Sophi, whom he supposed to be deeply engaged with the *Turks*. But how great was *Causoli-Kan's* Surprise, when he came near *Ispahan*, to hear that *Schah-Thamas* had just concluded a Peace with the *Porte*, the most ignominious that could be imagined; and that this effeminate Prince, without even having deign'd to go out of his Pavilion, or take any Care of his Affairs, had passed all this Time in his Haram, employ'd, or rather besieged, by Women only! The brave General, afflicted in the most sensible Manner, broke thro' the Laws of the Country, entering the Capital with an armed Force,

Force, and penetrating even to the Palace, where the Sophi sought to hide himself in vain. His own Slaves laid hold of him, and brought him to *Causoli-Kan*, who loaded him with the most bitter Reproaches. Go, said he, *weak and effeminate Prince, go and learn the Art of reigning! For my Part, I will never put up with a Peace so dishonourable, and so disadvantageous to thee and thy Empire.* At the same Time he ordered the Sophi to be conducted, under a numerous Guard, to the Fortrefs of *Cashin*, the antient Residence of the *Schahs*, and there to be shut up in an inaccessible Tower.

From that Day *Causoli-Kan* took the Name of Generalissimo, and renewed the War against the *Turks* with more Vigour than ever.

You know too well, Sir, the Success of this War, for me to follow my Author further in the Relation he gives of it. Besides, it is a Rule with me not to encroach upon the Rights of Messieurs the Journalists. They have taken Care enough to inform the World, that *Causoli-Kan*, dreading the Consequence of a new League to replace *Schah-Thamas* on the Throne, had ordered his Eyes to be put out in Prison, and placed the Crown upon the Head of his Infant-Son. But the following Particulars relate to the Origin of this Generalissimo, and will certainly appear to you quite new.

Our Traveller in many Places cites the Authority of one *Anthony Christedel*, a famous Merchant of *Ispahan*, who about six or seven Years ago made a Voyage into *Holland* and the *Low Conntries*.

The

The better to clear up this Point (it is the Author who speaks) of the Origin of *Causoli Kan*, I will repeat a Fact here that *Christedel* has related to me, and affirmed more than once. Passing thro' a little City in *Brabant*, called in *French* *Tirlemont*, and in *Flemish* *Thienen*, the Burgomaster of the Place required to see his Passports; and having discovered that he was of *Isfahan*, enquired of him if he did not know the great *Persian* General, and what Countryman he was said to be? *Christedel* answered, that he had often had the Honour to see *Causoli-Kan*, and that it was whispered in *Persia* that he was a Native of *Brabant*. The Burgomaster assured him the Rumour was true, for he was their very Townsman at *Tirlemont*, and had a Sister now living there, who might easily be spoke with, her House being but a few Doors off. *Christedel* was very earnest to be brought into her Presence; but was not a little astonished to find only a mean Woman, with two Children, and very indifferently lodged. Her Husband was not at home. *Christedel* enquired, if she had nothing to send to her Brother, who was now such a great Lord: To which she answered smartly, that she did not want her Brother, nor her Brother her.

*Christedel* could never tell me this Woman's Family Name; and upon my often reproaching him for neglecting to enquire it, he used to tell me, that this could have done him no Service; because he should not have been such a Madman, as to have mentioned an Origin in *Persia* so disproportioned to the Quality of Generalissimo and Regent of the King-



Kingdom. He added, that he had more regard for his Head, than ever to speak of this Discovery to any Person in whom he had less Confidence than in me.

This Merchant, as well as many other People whom I have examined at *Ispahan* and elsewhere, were ignorant what Name he went by before the People gave him that of *Causoli-Kan*. It was just the same with regard to his Religion, which no body could describe to me. In Appearance he is of the reigning Faith, a *Mahometan* of the Sect of *Ali*; but this is looked upon to be for Form's Sake only. Some of his Officers, who live in great Intimacy with him, assured me that he was not so much as circumcised. Most of the *Persians* believe him to be still a Christian in his Heart, and the more because he cherishes those of that Religion with peculiar Tenderness, giving equal Permission both to Catholics and Protestants to build as many Churches as they please for those of their own Communion, and taking them all under his Protection without Distinction. The *Jews*, and all the *Europeans* in general, of what Nation or Sect soever, have also full Liberty in *Persia* both of Conscience and Commerce.

*Christedel* related to me another Particular which I must not here omit. This Merchant, with four others, being just returned to *Ispahan*, about three Years ago, from a Voyage they had made to *Batavia* and *Holland*, *Causoli Kan* had them brought before him, and questioned them in *French* and *Dutch* concerning abundance of Things relating to Commerce. In particular he got  
In-

Information of the Price of the chief Commodities, the Profit that might be made on them, and the Custom-house Rates that were paid in every Country thro' which they were carried. He seemed surpris'd, that Nations, who could bring into *Persia* all the Commodities of their own Countries, would not allow the same Liberty with regard to the Goods and Merchants of *Persia*. He gave them to understand, that after he had established Peace with the neighbouring Powers, and Tranquility in the Provinces at Home, he would promote the Flourishing of Arts and Sciences, and more especially of Commerce,

Such is the Idea, Sir, which this Traveller of Distinction gives us of *Causoli Kan*, that Deliverer of *Persia*, that Hero of *Asia*, that consummate General, before whose Prudence and Valour two Usurpers of the *Persian* Throne have already fallen, as well as the Power of the Great Mogul, the *Turk*, and other neighbouring Nations; that Conqueror, in a Word, who seems to imitate *Tamerlan* in what he had extraordinary and laudable, without any of his ill Qualities. Like that *Tartar* Emperor, *Causoli Kan* has risen by his own Merit, from the meanest Extraction to supreme Command. Like him, he is become the Terror of all the neighbouring States. But the *Persian* General hath hitherto contented himself with re-uniting to the Dominions of the *Sophi* what had been dismembered from them, without suffering his Ambition to lead him beyond the antient Limits of the Kingdom.

*Causoli Kan* has never sullied his Exploits by such Acts of Cruelty as *Tamerlan* is reproached with: But there is one Particular that elevates the *Persian* General infinitely above *Tamerlan*, and perhaps above all the Generals who ever were in the same Circumstances as himself\*; I mean, that he might, and may at this Time, ascend the Throne with Impunity, and yet has never discovered that he has had the least Temptation that Way.

If I can discover any other Particulars of this Generalissimo, so worthy of being personally known, I will not fail to communicate them out of Hand."

*I am, Sir, &c.*

Some Persons will not readily give Credit to an anonymous Letter, but look upon *Christedel's* Negligence, in not enquiring the Name of *Kouli Kan's* Sister, as a Mark of Imposture, without regarding the Reason he brings in his own Excuse. For my own part, I cannot warrant the Truth of a Fact that hardly seems to be well established. But what follows I had from a Person of Credit, who lately passed through *Tirlemont*. He assured me that he was told there by People of good Figure, that *Kouli Kan* was a native of that City; that in his Youth he had been a little extravagant, and having demanded Money one Day of his Brother, who was

\* This Panegyric has no longer any Foundation, the *Persian* General having now mounted the Throne, as every one knows, and as I shall relate in the Sequel of this History.

Parson of a Parish a little way out of Town, the Brother refused him; that *Kouli Kan*, in revenge, followed him into the Church with a Cudgel, and beat him most severely; that he afterwards made his Escape into *Holland*, from whence he got to *Smyrna*, and thence into *Persia*.

The Gentleman added, that they offered to conduct him also to the *Persian* General's Sister; but that having no Time to stay, he went forwards without seeing her, or being informed what was her Name.

I leave the Reader in full Liberty to pass what Judgment he pleases on these Facts; but must remark in the mean Time, that upon well considering the Matter, the Letter I have inserted seems to me a Forgery, written by some *Brabanter*. It may easily be detected by the Style\*, notwithstanding the Pains I have taken to give it a little better Turn. Moreover our Author, or his Traveller of Distinction, is mistaken when he says that *Surat* did belong to *Persia*. Nor is he more exact in his History than in his Geography, but sometimes confounds *Mir-weis* with *Magmud*, and speaks of *Kouli Kan* as if he had made War on *Mir-weis*, which is absolutely false. I am very apt to think that the *Europeans*, jealous of the *Orientals*, have invented all these Fables about *Kouli Kan*, in order to rob them of the Honour of having so great Warrior born among them.

\* This Peculiarity of Stile is partly lost in the Translation.

What the more persuades me of this, is a Letter written from *Constantinople* by the Marquis de Villeneuve, Ambassador of *France*, who certainly ought to have better Information than the Burgomaster and Citizens of *Tirlemont*.

*Extract of a Letter from the Marquis de Villeneuve at Constantinople, concerning Thamas Kouli Kan. Dated September 8, 1736.*

Extract of  
a Letter  
from the  
*French*  
Ambassa-  
dor at  
*Constanti-  
nople*.

“**T**HAMAS Kouli-Kan was born in a Village called *Afehis*, in the Province of *Chorasan*, about four or five Leagues distant from *Mached*, famous for the Sepulchre of *Iman Bioa*. His Father was a Shepherd, and the Son in his Youth followed the same Occupation. He was soon weary, however, of that humble Life. His great Talents, and boundless Ambition, made him think of advancing himself to somewhat above what his Birth gave him room to expect. He stole 700 Sheep from his Father, which he sold at *Mached*; and with the Money he made of them, got together several lawless Fellows, put himself at their Head, and began to rob the Caravans. Growing by this Method immensely rich, he continued his Robberies for seven Years successively, till the Taking of *Ispahan* by the *Aghwans*.

*Schah Houssein*, during the Siege of that Place, had sent Prince *Thamas* his Son into the Province of *Mazanderan*, to raise Forces, in order either to deliver the Father from the Danger which threatened him, or to revenge



venge the Cause of the whole Royal Family. *Kouli Kan* at that Time went by the Name of *Nadir Kuli*. He had under his Command about 6000 of the most resolute Fellows in the World, all well armed, well disciplined, and practised to Slaughter. With this Body he appeared before Prince *Thamas*, who was then at *Asterabad* in the *Tabristan*, upon the *Caspian Sea*; offered him his Service, and swore, upon the Forfeiture of his Head, that he would re-establish him upon the Throne of his Ancestors, and revenge him on the *Aghwans*, if he would only promise him, in recompense, to make him his Prime Vizir. Prince *Thamas*, pleased with so unexpected a Supply, for which he had such great Occasion, accepted *Nadir Kuli's* Offer, embraced him with much Affection, and gave him the Name of *Thamas*, as a Token that he would consider him hereafter as his other self. Our General then abandoned his Name of *Nadir*, and assumed that of *Thamas Kouli Kan*."

*Kuli* in *Persia* signifies *Slave*, and all the great *Persian* Lords hold it a peculiar Honour to bear this Title, to intimate that they are Slaves to the King, always ready to sacrifice their Lives and Fortunes in his Service. *Kan* signifies *Prince*, or *Chief* of some Army, City, or Province.

Significa-  
tion of the  
Word  
*Kuli*.

And *Kan*

It may seem surprising, that Prince *Thamas* so readily accepted the Services of a Shepherd, and a Captain of Thieves. But if we consider the Extremity to which that Prince was reduced, we shall find nothing extraor-

Remarks  
on the  
Quality of  
a Captain  
of  
Thieves.

dinary in his making use of all possible Means to advance his Affairs. Besides, in a large Kingdom, like that of *Persia*, agitated as it was at that Time, it is hardly known who is a Shepherd and who is a Gentleman. In all Appearance, *Kouli Kan's* Father was none of your miserable Sort of Shepherds, such as we see in *Europe*: And as to the Quality of Captain of Thieves, how many Princes are publick Robbers of their own Subjects? Do we not read in the History of *Germany*, that during the long *Interregnum* which preceded the Election of *Rodolph I.* Count of *Habsburg*, the greatest Part of the Princes and Counts of the Empire were at the Head of a prodigious Gang of Thieves, with whom they committed a thousand Murders and Robberies, so that it was impossible to travel with Safety in any Part of the Empire; and that these illustrious Leaders of Banditti were afterwards promoted to be Generals of Armies, according to the Degree of Merit which they had acquired in their former Occupation of Thieving?

*Kouli Kan*  
gains the  
Favour of  
Prince  
*Thamas.*

As for *Kouli Kan*, he soon gained the Favour of Prince *Thamas*, and the Hearts of the Soldiers. His Vigilance, Penetration, and Intrepidity, soon testified his Capacity for the greatest Enterprises. I have already said, that after the Death of *Magmud*, *Eschref* got Possession of the Crown of *Persia*. That Usurper made an Alliance with *Russia*, by the Mediation of several Places on the *Caspian-Sea*, which he gave up to that Power. He thought also to secure the *Ottoman Porte*, that he might turn his whole

whole Strength against Prince *Thamas*. The Prince, on his Part, made a Treaty with the Great Mogul, and received under his Obedience the Prince of *Candabar*, Brother of the Traitor *Magmud*. This Prince, emulous of *Eschref's* Greatness, meant no more at first than by joining Prince *Thamas*, whom I shall for the future call *Schah*, to drive the Usurper from the Throne, which he hoped afterwards to obtain for himself, either by Force or Fraud: But when he saw that the *Schah's* Affairs went on successfully, he changed his Battery, and behaved afterwards like a faithful Vassal.

*Schah Thamas* having consulted *Kouli Kan* upon their first Expedition, that General was of Opinion that they ought to besiege *Schiras*, in order to shut up *Ispahan*. Upon which the Army marched towards *Bender-Abas*, to cut off the Communication which *Eschref* had with that Place. The Troops were divided into two Bodies; one of which, under *Schah Thamas* himself, marched towards *Schiras* to form the Siege; the other, under the Command of *Thamas Kouli Kan*, took another Route, to observe the Motions of *Seydal* General of the *Aghwans*, who with a considerable Body of Troops was encamped between *Ispahan* and *Schiras*, to cover the first of those Places, and at the same Time to be in Readiness to march to the Relief of the other. *Kouli Kan* advanced with such Expedition, that he came up with *Seydal* before that General had heard of any Design being formed against *Schiras*. The Proximity of the two Armies gave Rise to several petty

The Siege  
of *Schiras*.

Skirmishes, in which *Kouli Kan's* Troops had always the Advantage.

Mean while the News of the Siege of *Schiras* came to *Eschref*, who learned from thence what he had to fear for his Capital. He lost no Time, but got together all the Troops he could, and leaving a Garison of 8000 Men in *Ispahan*, sat out with the rest to join General *Seydal*, and march with him to the Relief of *Schiras*. *Kouli Kan*, upon the Report that *Eschref* had left *Ispahan*, reflected that if he continued any longer in his present Post, he should infallibly be encompassed by the two Armies, one of which only was more numerous than his. This obliged him to retire towards *Schiras*, to rejoin *Schah Thamas*. No sooner was he arrived, but he persuaded that Prince to raise the Siege, and march directly to give *Eschref* Battle. This Resolution being approved by all the Generals, the royal Army decamped, and went in quest of the Rebels, with whom they soon came up. Both Armies at first began to secure their Posts and entrench, and they were some Time in Sight of each other, before anything was undertaken on either Side. *Kouli Kan* was of Opinion, that as they had fewer Troops than the Rebels, they ought to make good the Advantage of Ground.

Battle between the  
*Aghwans*  
and *Per-*  
*sians*.

At four Days End *Eschref* came out of his Lines, to fall on Prince *Thamas*. The Attack was made in five different Places, with great Fury; but the *Aghwans* were every where repulsed, three several Times. *Eschref*, seeing this, resolved to make a last Effort, and began the Battle with more Bravery than before. The Wing led by the Usurper was opposed

opposed to the Troops commanded by *Kouli Kan*.

This brave General let the *Aghwans* advance within Pistol-Shot, and then discharged his whole Train of Artillery, which prodigiously thinned their Ranks. He then ordered his Horse to advance Sabre in Hand, and take the Enemy in the Flank.

Behaviour  
of *Kouli Kan*.

This Order was executed with so much Bravery and Judgment, that the Rebels begun to give Way at the first Shock. *Kouli Kan* sent to the *Schah* for Part of his Wing, to support the Attack, in hopes to bear down the Enemy: This being granted, they pressed the *Aghwans* so hard that they took to Flight. They endeavoured to recover their Lines, and dispute the Victory afresh; but were so closely pursued, that they were obliged to disperse. A prodigious Slaughter ensued, above 15,000 dead Bodies being found on the Field of Battle. *Eschref* retired to *Ispahan* with the shattered Remains of his Army, burning and destroying all that came in his Way, to deprive the *Persians* of all Means of Subsistence, in case they should advance to the Capital after their Victory.

The Re-  
bels are  
beaten.

General *Seydal*, who had suffered the least in this Action, retreated towards *Bender-Abas* with a Body of 10,000 Men. *Kouli Kan* followed him closely with an equal Number of Troops, overtook him before he had Time to intrench himself, and beat him so terribly, that hardly a twentieth Man escaped; the rest were all cut to Pieces. The *Aghwan* General, after this Loss, retired to the Side of *Candahar*: And *Kouli Kan* having

*Kouli Kan*  
beats Ge-  
neral *Seydal*.



ing so happily dissipated the Rebel Army, which rendered the Taking of *Ispahan* very difficult, turned back and rejoined the *Schah*, to march with him directly to *Ispahan*. This Victory was the *Æra* of *Schah Thamas's* good Fortune. All the *Persians*, whom Fear had before retained in the Rebel's Party, came over in Troops to the *Schah's* Army; and even some of the *Aghwans* engaged in his Interest. Six thousand of this Nation, who were in Garrison at *Caswin*, surrendered at the Approach of the royal Army, upon Assurance given that they should receive no Injury, but have a full Pardon. They opened the Gates of the City to the *Schah*, and took on in his Troops.

*Eschref*  
abandons  
*Ispahan*.

The Usurper *Eschref*, terrified at so rapid a Progress, did not think himself safe in *Ispahan*. Having got together all his Treasures, he with his Women, and 10,000 Men who still continued faithful, left this Capital, and took the Road of *Candahar*. Two Days after his Departure, the Van-guard of the royal Army appeared before *Ispahan*. The Gates were instantly opened, and the *Persian* Soldiers received by the Inhabitants with unspeakable Joy. There was Eating and Drinking for them in Abundance.

*Schah*  
*Thamas*  
enters in  
Triumph.

*Schah-Thamas* entered this Capital in Triumph: The Name of *Kouli-Kan* rang thro' all the Streets; every one called him his Deliverer. Two or three thousand *Aghwans*, who could not follow the Usurper, were yet remaining in *Ispahan*: The *Persians* would gladly have cut them to Pieces, if *Kouli-Kan* had not ordered the contrary, and procured for them the King's Protection,  
with

with a general Amnesty. When he had obtained this of the *Schah*, he ordered it to be published by Sound of Trumpet, that no Person should disturb the *Aghwans* who had submitted, whom his Majesty would regard as his faithful Subjects, as if they had never been in Rebellion.

The *Persian* Army, in the mean Time, encamped in the Neighbourhood of *Ispahan*. It consisted of 50,000 Men, and was soon to be considerably augmented.

It was in *November*, 1729, that the *Aghwans* were expelled, seven Years after they had invaded the Throne of *Persia*.

*Schah-Thamas* sent Orders to the Governors of several Provinces to levy new Troops. It was now hoped, that *Persia* in a little Time would be able to regain from the *Turks*, the *Russians*, and the Mogul, what they had either dismembered from it by Force, or procured the Cession of, during the Troubles.

At first it was not known which Way the Usurper was fled; some Advices saying, he had been taken Prisoner by the *Turks*; others, that he had killed himself in Despair: But these were all only flying Reports. When it was known for certain that he had retired towards *Candahar*, *Kouli-Kan* put himself at the Head of 15,000 Men, and prepared to go in Pursuit of him. He recommended it to the King to march against the *Turks* with the rest of his Army, assuring his Majesty, that as soon as he had rid him of *Eschref*, he would fly to his Assistance. *Kouli-Kan* set out in the Month of *December*, 1729, towards *Candahar*. The People thronged from

every

*Eschref* is  
pursued by  
*Kouli Kan*.

every Quarter to see the Deliverer of *Persia* : His Army increased considerably ; and the *Jews* and *Armenians* advanced him immense Sums of Money. With all these Recommendations, it was impossible but he must be every where well received. Scarce was he within two Days Journey of *Candabar*, but he learned that the unfortunate *Eschref* had been before the Gates of that City, demanding an Asylum against the *Persian* General, who was in Pursuit of him ; but that *Magmud's* Brother had refused him Admittance, and forbid him to come near. This was a hard Sentence for *Eschref*. *Candabar* was his native Place, where *Mir-wais* his Uncle had commanded in Quality of Prince,<sup>s</sup> and *Abdalla* his Father, whom *Magmud* assassinated, had been Regent. Besides, he who governed there at present was *Magmud's* Brother, and consequently his Cousin-German. All these Reasons had augmented his Hopes of being received into *Candabar*, in spite of his particular Differences with the Prince of that City. His Rage, when he saw himself rejected by his Countrymen and nearest Relations, was violent. It threw him into a deep Melancholy, which degenerated into the same Disease that had seized *Magmud*. To complete his ill Fortune, the greatest Part of his Army, seeing no more to expect from him, and finding themselves in their own Country, deserted him ; so that he had but a very inconsiderable Body of Troops when *Kouli-Kan* was on the Point of attacking him.

In this Extremity, it seems to have been *Eschref's* Business to have sought an Alliance  
with

with the Great Mogul, and to have put himself under the Protection of that powerful Monarch, who, spite of his secret Engagement with *Schah-Thamas*, would not have failed to support *Eschref*, for a Reason common to all Sovereigns,--that they love to fish in troubled Water. But whether his Melancholy made him incapable of that Reflection, or that Heaven had resolved to punish him for his Usurpation and other Crimes, he made no Use of the Support he might have drawn from the Great Mogul, nor even so much as thought to demand it. *Kouli-Kan* at last came up with this Usurper, and prepared for an Engagement, which very soon was decisive. The *Aghwans*, surrounded, were either cut in Pieces or taken. *Eschref* was among the Prisoners. *Kouli-Kan* no sooner had the Usurper in his Power, but he ordered both his Eyes to be put out, and some Days after had him beheaded. His Body was embalmed and sent to *Ispahan*, where it was embalmed, and exposed in the High Road. An ignominious, but just Punishment, for so cruel an Usurper as he had been. His Catastrophe is a fine Example of the Inconstancy of Fortune. But the preceding Month he reigned in *Ispahan*, as *Schah*, or King of *Persia*; all the Inhabitants of that Capital acknowledged his Laws, and dreaded his Cruelty; and in less than five Weeks behold him a Fugitive, pursued, taken, executed, exposed for a Spectacle to Passengers, and a Repast for the Birds of the Air!

All the Treasures that he had brought with him, fell into the Hands of the victorious *Kouli Kan*. There were six Millions of Money

*Eschref* defeated by *Kouli Kan*.  
Who takes him, puts out his Eyes, and cuts off his Head.

The Use ney in Specie, and the Value of the Jewels that *Kouli* was inestimable. *Kouli Kan* distributed the *Kan* makes Money among his Soldiers, whose Affections he completely secured by this Liberality ; of *Eschref's* Treasures. and kept the Jewels and Precious Stones to himself, to make such Use of as he should see convenient.

He sullies  
his Vic-  
tory.

*Kouli Kan* sullied his Victory by putting to Death the chief Men of the *Aghwans*, notwithstanding their Proteftations of Fidelity to the King of *Persia*. It is in vain to pretend the Necessity of it, to root out all the Seeds of Rebellion from so turbulent a Nation as the *Aghwans*. The Ways of Moderation and Clemency are always the most proper to conciliate the Affections of restless and malecontent People. The Children of these illustrious *Aghwans*, to the Number of 400, were sent to *Ispahan*, and the Nation was taxed at two Millions of Crowns, towards the Expences of the War.

*Kouli Kan*  
enters  
*Candabar*.

*Kouli Kan* entered *Candabar* as a Conqueror, and disarmed all the Inhabitants. Eight Thousand of the most Willing were enlisted in the *Persian* Army ; and *Magmud's* Brother, who had shut the Gates against *Eschref*, was continued in his Post of Governor ; only a few trusty Persons were left to observe him, whose Advice he was ordered to ask on Occasion, that he might undertake nothing against the Interest of *Kouli Kan*. This General then marched against several Places in the little Kingdom of *Candabar*, of which the *Moguls* had got Possession during the Troubles in *Persia*. He soon drove out these unwelcome Guests, and confined them within their own Frontiers.



tiers. He imposed a new Oath on the Inhabitants of the Places he had reduced in favour of *Schah Thamas*. Already the Victor threatened the hereditary Estates of the great *Mogul*, tho' defended by Armies three Times more numerous than his : But every Thing was to be dreaded from so bold and fortunate a General as *Kouli Kan*. The *Mogul* made these Reflections, and sued the King of *Persia* for Peace ; which was granted him upon Condition that he should no more intermeddle with the Affairs of that Kingdom. *Kouli Kan* employed about nine Months in his Expedition, and about as much more in restoring good Order, and securing the frontier Provinces, which he had brought again under the *Persian* Dominion.

His Progress.

*Schah Thamas*, in the mean Time, was less fortunate in his War with the *Turks*. Twice he had been beaten. A third Time he was victorious, by means of strong Reinforcements which he had received from the several Provinces of his Kingdom. This Monarch, far from taking the Advantages of his Victory, and pushing the Enemy to the utmost of his Power, amused himself only with excessive Drinking, and toying away his Time with his Concubines. His Generals had acted for him, and retook *Tauris* from the *Turks*. Notwithstanding which, spite of these Advantages, the *Schah*, sunk in Luxury, caused Solicitations for Peace, under his Hand, to be made at the *Ottoman* Court.

The ill Conduct of *Schah Thamas*, which obliges him to solicit the *Ottoman* Court for Peace.

*Kouli Kan* had good Spies at Court, and in the Royal Army, who soon informed him of the Steps taken by his Majesty. He felt all

M

the

*Kouli Kan* the Indignation that a Warrior, eager after  
endeavours to divert him from the Peace.

Glory, and jealous for the Honour and Grandeur of the State in whose Service he was engaged, can be supposed to have conceived. He sent an Express well escorted to the *Schah*, with Orders to assure him, in his Name, that he ought to beware how he made a Peace with the *Turks*, or gave up to them an Inch of Territory : That for his Part, he would come to his Support in a few Days, with an Army of between 25 and 30,000 Men ; intreating that till then he would keep on the Defensive only.

*Schah*  
*Thamas*  
makes a  
shameful  
Peace.

All this did not hinder the *Schah* from proceeding, and concluding the most shameful and disadvantageous Peace with the *Turks*, that *Persia* could possibly have made, if it had been reduced to the last Extremity. By this Treaty the *Ottoman Porte* remained in Possession of *Georgia* ; obtained the Cession of *Curdistan* ; *Adirbeitzan*, the City of *Tauris* excepted ; and the Province of *Eriwan*, with its Capital.

*Kouli Kan*  
is provoked  
at it.

*Kouli Kan* heard all these Particulars with a Resentment that is not easy to express. Just as he was ready to set forwards, in order to come and re-animate the Courage of his Master, which seemed entirely damped, he received Advice that this weak and timorous Prince had disbanded Part of his Army, sent the rest either into Garison or Winter Quarters, and was returned to *Ispahan*, there to plunge himself in Softness and Effeminacy. This made him redouble his Diligence, to return with all possible Speed.

In the mean Time the *Turks*, sensible of Arrogance of the Weakness of *Schah Thamas*, grew extremely arrogant. They were for sentencing the *Turks*. to Death the Bassa of *Bagdat*, who negotiated this Peace with *Persia*, for having given up the City of *Tauris*; persuaded that if he had insisted upon the Restitution of that Place, the timid Prince would not have dared to refuse it. The Grand Vizir preserved the Bassa's Life, by representing to the Divan that the *Persian War* had been destructive to the *Ottoman Porte*, which had lost therein the Flower of her Troops, and that they ought to think themselves very happy to get rid of it with so much Glory and Advantage. This Peace, so scandalous for *Persia*, was signed about the End of the Year 1731; and the *Schah* returned to *Isfahan*, gave himself up to Debauchery, leaving the Government of the State to his Ministers and Favourites.

*Kouli Kan*, in the mean Time, by long Marches came near the Capital of *Persia*. He received Informations by the Way, cautioning him to be upon his Guard with the King, who was forming some Design against either his Life or his Liberty. In Effect, *Schah Thamas* sent a Courier to meet *Kouli Kan*, and tell him, that now *Persia* was in Peace and the King had disbanded his Army, it was proper he should do the same by that under his Command. *Kouli Kan*, far from complying with this Order, answered the Messenger, "That the King had been  
" at free liberty to act as he thought proper  
" with regard to his own Troops; but that  
" as for him, he was not inclined to make

Difference  
between  
*Schah*  
*Thamas*  
and *Kouli*  
*Kan*.

“ the same Use of his, and that he would  
 “ soon come and give an Account to his Ma-  
 “ jesty of the Reasons of his Refusal.” In-  
 stead of disbanding his Army, the General  
 now re-inforced it with all the Hands he could  
 procure. A great Part of the Soldiers which  
*Schah Thamas* had discharged, came and en-  
 tered themselves under *Kouli Kan*, who ar-  
 rived in the Neighbourhood of *Ispahan* with  
 40,000 effective Men. When he was with-  
 in a Day’s March of this Capital, he signified  
 to the *Schah* the News of his Arrival, and  
 intreated his Majesty to send him Orders  
 more for the Good and Glory of the State  
 than the former. *Schah Thamas* persisted in  
 his Resolution that the General should dis-  
 arm, and would permit him to enter *Ispa-*  
*han* with only 200 Horse. Whether he de-  
 pended upon *Kouli Kan*’s Obedience, or whe-  
 ther his Debaucheries had deprived him of  
 Reason, he took no Measures to put him-  
 self in a Posture of Defence, but shut himself  
 up in his *Haram*, and continued his usual  
 Course of Life. In the mean Time *Kouli*  
*Kan*, having received his Monarch’s Answer,  
 assembled together the Heads of his Army,  
 and harangued them to this Effect :

*Kouli*  
*Kan*’s Ha-  
 rangue to  
 the chief  
 Officers of  
 his Army.

“ My Companions, said he, *Schah Tha-*  
 “ *mas* has as ungenerous a Soul as his Father  
 “ *Hussein*. He makes no Distinction be-  
 “ tween brave Men and Cowards, between  
 “ Fidelity and Treason. You are all worthy  
 “ of Rewards, and yet he would have me  
 “ disband you without any other Compli-  
 “ ment, than that he has no more Occasion  
 “ for your Service. Yet it is you and I who  
 “ have done all, who have placed this un-  
 “ grate-

“grateful Prince upon the Throne, and  
“established him there; who extinguish-  
“ed the Rebellion, and carried Ter-  
“ror to the very Center of the *Mogul’s*  
“Dominions. Who can recount the Pains  
“we have suffered, the Fatigues we have  
“borne in such long Marches, the Battles  
“we have fought, the Blood we have shed,  
“and the Hazards we have run? I will not  
“mention the scandalous Peace which this  
“*Schah* has concluded with the *Turks*, since  
“there is not one among you but is now  
“acquainted with it, but is touched with  
“Indignation at it. You know also how  
“he has dealt by the Army under his own  
“Command. The Soldiers have been dis-  
“persed as Men of no Use, and the Officers  
“discharged without Recompence. Not e-  
“ven the Generals but have been made sen-  
“sible of the Effects of his Ingratitude. I  
“beseech you to tell me, my dear Compa-  
“nions, what Remedy should be applied to  
“such Evils as these! Are you resolved,  
“with me, to retrieve the Glory of *Persia*;  
“to follow me into *Ispahan*, and require  
“our *Schah* to give an Account of his Mal-  
“Administration?”

Here *Kouli Kan* paused, and waited for the Assembly’s Answer. Their Sentiments were not divided; they all cried out, they were ready to follow their General wherever he would lead them, for the Honour and Advantage of the Kingdom. Upon this *Kouli Kan* gave Orders, that the Army should hold themselves in readiness to march the next Morning at Break of Day.



The Army marched accordingly, and arrived the same Day at the Gates of *Ispahan*. The Inhabitants of this City, who had the utmost Confidence in their General, and who besides had received no Orders to deny him Entrance, threw open their Gates.

As soon as *Kouli Kan* saw himself Master of *Ispahan*, he distributed his Troops in all the Quarters of that great City, took Possession of the most advantageous Posts, and replaced the Guards of *Schah Thamas*, at the several Gates, with Detachments of its own Troops. This done, he sent some Officers into the Royal Palace, to summon *Schah Thamas* to appear in the *Meydan*, and give an Account of his Conduct to the People and the Army. That unhappy Prince had no Inclination to come in the Presence of such Judges. He endeavoured to hide himself in the Bottom of a Wardrobe. His Eunuchs detected him there, and dragged him out, to bring him before *Kouli Kan*. This General had taken his Place in the *Meydan*, surrounded by all the great Men both of the Army and the Court. Every one waited for the Unravelling of this Scene.

No sooner did *Schah Thamas* appear, borne by his Eunuch's and Slaves, but *Kouli Kan* ordered some Troops to advance, to prevent any Disorder. The Murmur of the People ceasing, the General addressed himself to the King. He reproached him in the severest Terms for his Debaucheries, his Indolence, his Effeminacy, and his Cowardice. He entered into a Detail of the Faults he had committed during the last War with the *Turks*, and the scandalous Peace he had concluded.

He

He declared him an Enemy of his Country, and unworthy to fill the Throne of the Sophies. He added, that for the Good of the State he should be deposed, and his Son *Abas*, a Prince only five or six Months old, made King in his stead : And during the Minority of that Prince, that the Kingdom should be governed by wise and prudent Ministers, who had the Honour and Interest of *Persia* at Heart.

*Kouli Kan* deposes the *Sophi*, and raises his Son, an Infant, to the Throne.

No Man had the Courage to oppose this Alteration. *Schah Thamas* himself was so confounded at it, that he had not Power to speak a Word in his own Justification. He only shrugg'd up his Shoulders, in Token of Astonishment. After that *Kouli Kan* dismissed the Assembly, and left the King under the Guard of some trusty Officers. He then repaired to the Palace Royal, followed by a Crowd of Ministers and Generals ; went directly into the Appartment of the young Prince, who was lying in a Cradle ; ordered the Royal Crown to be brought, and put it upon the Head of this Infant. He then fell prostrate before the new King, and all the *Grandeess* did the same. Being risen from the Ground, he took the Oath of Fidelity, holding two Fingers upon a *Koran* placed at the Foot of the Cradle. All the great Men followed his Example ; and a *Mahometan Persian* concluded the Ceremony, by muttering over some Prayers for the new King.

*Kouli Kan* afterwards turned himself towards the Ministers and Generals there present. " Nothing now remains, said he, but to elect a *Generalissimo* and Regent of the Kingdom. Let us chuse, Gentlemen, from among

among us, the Man that you shall think the most capable of exercising these two Posts in Conjunction."

*Kouli Kan* is declared Regent of the Kingdom during the Minority of the new King.

Not a Man offered to fix his Eyes upon any other than *Kouli Kan*. Even if they had not thought him the most worthy, he was too well supported for any one to dare offend him; and it is plainly enough seen, that though he left the Choice to the Assembly, he was not in the Disposition to give way to any other. He had already done too much for them to misapprehend his Meaning. All the *Grandeess* therefore tendered the Honour to him, saluted him Regent of the Kingdom, and General in chief of the *Persian Armies*.

He chuses a Council.

*Kouli Kan* chose himself a Council, composed of the most sensible Men of the Court, and who were the most strongly attached to his Interest. It was to take care of the interior Government of the State, while the General was in the Field at the Head of Armies. As to *Schah Thamas*, *Kouli Kan* had him conducted into a Fortrefs, where he was deprived of Sight by the hot Iron, in order to strip him at once of all Hopes of ever remounting the Throne. The *Ottoman Porte* was struck with Surprise at the News of this Revolution. She gave all her Attention to penetrate the Views of *Kouli Kan*, and very soon had her Curiosity satisfied. That General sent a Memorial to the *Persian* Ministers who resided at *Constantinople*, to be presented in his Name to the Grand Vizir; in which he declared, "That on Account of the scandalous Peace which *Schah Thamas* had concluded with the *Porte*, that Prince

How he treats *Schah Thamas*. He sends a Memorial to the *Persian* Ministers at *Constantinople*.

" was

“ was judged unworthy the Throne of his  
 “ Ancestors, and had been justly deposed by  
 “ those Subjects who had the Interest of  
 “ *Persia* at Heart.” He then demanded in  
 the Name of the young *Schah Abas*, the Re-  
 stitution of those Provinces and States which  
 had been so calmly ceded by the King his  
 Father.

This Memorial threw the Council of the Grand Signior into an Astonishment not easy to express. At first they thought it not worthy of an Answer; but that Opinion was soon altered, and a very menacing Answer returned. The Sultan therein threatened with his Indignation all who had been concerned in the Deposition of *Schah Thamas*, if they did not immediately acknowledge him again for their Sovereign, and replace him on the Throne, which was his lawful Inheritance. Both the *Ottoman Porte* and the *Persian Court* were ignorant that *Schah Thamas* had been deprived of Sight: And the Divan hardly knew the Name of *Kouli Kan*, or at least were not informed of the Share he had in the Soldiers’ Affections, and the People’s Confidence; for which Reason they thought to intimidate him. But *Kouli Kan* laughed at the Menaces of the Grand Signior, and prepared to shew his Ministers that he was in a Condition to make them change their Tone.

Effect of  
 this Me-  
 morial in  
 the Grand  
 Signior’s  
 Council.

*Kouli Kan*  
 laughs at  
 their Me-  
 naces.

As soon as this Answer came to Hand, he began in earnest to levy Troops, to secure the fortified Places with strong Garrisons and plentiful Magazines, and to give all necessary Orders for disciplining the Soldiers. Some Provinces not appearing over-forward to contribute towards the Expences of War,  
 either

either by furnishing their Compliments of Men, or sending in their proportionate Sums, the new Regent sent some Regiments to live on them at Discretion, till they had intirely satisfied his Demands. This Severity struck Terror through the other Provinces, and every one laboured, with uncommon Zeal, to execute the Regent's Orders.

He applies for and obtains the Friendship of the *Russians*.

There was a separate Article in the Peace which *Schah Thamas* had concluded with the *Ottoman Porte*, by which the two Courts of *Ispahan* and *Constantinople* mutually agreed to unite their Forces, to oblige the Court of *Russia* to restore to *Persia* all that she had taken from that Kingdom. *Kouli Kan*, who had nothing at Heart but to humble the *Turks*, well perceived that to undertake any Thing against them, he ought to be secure on the Side of *Russia*. For this Reason he thought proper to send a solemn Embassy to the Court of *Petersburgh*, to demand her Friendship. The Ambassadors succeeded in their Negotiation, and concluded an Alliance between the two Empires, which subsists to this Day.

War between the *Turks* and *Persians*. Advantages gained by the *Turks* during *Kouli Kan's* Absence.

In 1733 War was openly declared between the *Turks* and *Persians*, and Hostilities began on both Sides. *Kouli Kan* not being able at the Beginning to appear at the Head of his Army, because of some Affairs which detained him at *Ispahan* longer than he expected; the *Turks* obtained some Advantages. The Seraskier *Topal Osman*, who commanded them, fell upon and entirely defeated a Body of *Persians*; which Misfortune was followed by another, that had almost ruined the

*Per-*



*Persian Army.* A Detachment of 30,000 Men had been sent to secure a certain Post. The Seraskier had Advice of it, and marched with all Expedition to meet them. The *Persians* took the best Step they could on this Occasion: They halted and entrenched themselves; being already too far from the Body of their Army, to have any Hopes of rejoining it before the Seraskier could attack them. *Topal Osman*, seeing them so well posted, did not think proper to force their Lines: But having his whole Army with him, he so, extended it, as quite to surround the 30,000 *Persians*, and cut off all their Communication. It seemed impossible for them to escape, and their Provisions at most were but for two or three Days; after which they must either demand Quarter, or perish with Hunger. On either Side there was equal Danger; so that these 30,000 Men were far from being easy in their Situation.

*Kouli Kan* arrived very opportunely to deliver them from the Inquietude they were in. *Kouli Kan's Ar-*  
He had no sooner heard of the Condition of rival.  
this Body of Troops, but he resolved to hazard all to disengage them. With this View, pretending an Inclination for Peace, he sent one of his Generals to make some Propositions to the Seraskier, and under Cover of this Embassy, introduced a Messenger into the *Persian* Camp, which was blocked up by the *Turks*, to advertise the commanding General that the next Day, at such an Hour, he would attack the Enemy; requiring him to do the same on his Part. *Kouli Kan* made such Expedition, that at his second Stage he was within half a Day's March of the *Turks*.  
His

He beats  
the *Turks*.

Receives  
two  
Wounds.

The Court  
of *Russia*  
compli-  
ments him  
on his Vic-  
tory, and  
sends him  
Presents.  
As does  
also that  
of *Vienna*.

His Army was 40,000 strong, and that of the *Turks* consisted of 80,000. But the 30,000 surrounded *Persians* fell on so bravely, and did their Duty so well, that they contributed much to the Defeat of the *Ottomans*. The Battle lasted eight Hours. The *Turks* made a good Defence; but were at last broken, and put to Flight. Eight thousand *Tartars* and 18,000 *Turks* fell in this Action, and 12,000 of the latter were wounded. The Coming on of Night prevented the Taking a great Number of Prisoners, and favoured the Enemies Escape. They left their Artillery, however, and all their Baggage.

*Topal Osman* was found dead on the Field of Battle. There were 9,000 *Persians* either killed or wounded. *Kouli-Kan* received two considerable Wounds, and had two Horses killed under him.

This Action happened in *July* 1733. *Kouli-Kan* dispatched an Express to the Court of *Petersburg*, to give Advice of his Victory to the Czarina; who wrote him a Letter of Felicitation on that Subject, accompanied with Presents of considerable Value.

The Court of *Vienna* also signified its Satisfaction on this Occasion; and it is said that the Emperor sent him a Sabre set with precious Stones of great Value, and a General's Truncheon finely wrought and gilt; and that the Express which was dispatched with these Presents, went by the Way of *Petersburg*. This will appear the more probable, if we consider that at the Time when his Imperial Majesty sent these Marks of his Good-will to the *Persian* General, the *French*, the *Spaniards*, and the *Savoyards* had begun

begun to invade his Dominions, and that it was for his Interest to have the *Turks* so employed elsewhere, that they could take no Advantage of these Invasions.

However that were, Hostilities continued The War  
between the *Turks* and the *Persians* in diffe- continues  
rent Places, as in *Georgia*, the *Tabristan*, and between  
the *Curdistan*. The *Turks* were beat four the *Turks*  
Times in the Campaign of 1734. *Kouli-* and *Per-*  
*Kan* received a great Number of Wounds *sians*.  
in these several Engagements, and had many  
Horses killed under him. He always ap-  
peared in Places of the greatest Danger, ani-  
mating the Troops by his Example, and  
rallying with admirable Celerity those who  
gave Way. The Campaign of 1735 was  
the most bloody of all, and the most advan-  
tageous to the *Persians*. The Court of *Con-*  
*stantinople* had sent the Seraskier *Abdalla Cu-*  
*progli*, to command the Troops which were  
to act against *Kouli-Kan*; who in the mean  
Time was busy in re-inforcing his Army,  
and forming of Magazines. The *Turks* were  
ready to enter into Action; when *Kouli-Kan*,  
willing to keep them back, signified to the  
Seraskier, that he was not averse to Propo-  
sals of Peace, if he could but hope to obtain  
one on any tolerable Conditions. The Se-  
raskier grew negligent on this Feint of *Kou-*  
*li-Kan's*, and let him know that he had full  
and ample Powers to treat on that Head, and  
that nothing was wanting but to chuse out  
a fit Place for the Negotiations. *Kouli-Kan*  
mentioned some Places, which he knew  
would not be accepted, and by so doing pro-  
tracted the Time. But as soon as he saw  
himself in a Condition to act, he threw off the  
N Mask,

*Kouli Kan*  
takes  
*Teflis*.

Mask, and advanced at the Head of 100,000 Men into *Persian Georgia*, of which the *Turks* were then Masters. He besieged *Teflis*, the Capital, and took it: And in a short Time after the *Turks* were driven out of all their Posts, in that Part of the Province which belonged to the Crown of *Persia*.

After that *Kouli-Kan* advanced towards *Armenia*, and began to lay Siege to *Erivan*; leaving a Body of 50,000 Men, who were newly arrived out of *Persia*, under the Command of two Generals, to provide for the Security of his late Conquests. As soon as he was arrived before *Erivan*, the *Janissaries*, who were there in Garrison, retired into the Castle, making a Shew of defending themselves to the last Extremity. This Castle is advantageously situated upon steep Rocks, and the *Bassâ* who commanded it was an Officer of Conduct and Bravery. Spite of all this the *Persians* carried it in ten Days, after a general Assault, which the *Janissaries* sustained with a great deal of Prudence and Valour. The *Bassâ* was killed upon the Breach; his Garrison put to the Sword; and the *Persians*, who never use to give Quarter to the *Turks*, nor receive any from them, massacred even Women with Child, and little Infants.

False Advice given  
to the  
*Ottoman*  
Court.

In the mean Time the *Ottoman Porte*, having received Advice from the *Seraskier* that *Kouli-Kan* was inclinable to Peace, had deputed the *Bassâ* of *Widdin's* Brother to the *Persian* General, with very considerable Presents: But this Envoy, surprised to hear of the Progress of the Enemy, did not think proper to continue his Journey. In his Return, he had the Misfortune to fall into the Hands

Hand, of a Party of *Georgians*, who massacred his Escorte, consisting of a hundred *Turkish* Horse, and so terribly wounded the Minister himself, that it was with the utmost Difficulty he regained the Seraskier's Camp.

No sooner was the Progress of *Kouli-Kan* known at *Constantinople*, but the *Ottoman* Court concluded it had been the Dupe of that General, who all this while had thought of nothing less than desiring a Peace. The Sultan was extremely enraged at this, and dispatched Orders to the Seraskier to pursue the *Persians* wherever they went, and to give them Battle the first Opportunity. He also sent him Re-inforcements of Men and Horses, and considerable Sums of Money.

While *Abdalla* Bassa waited for these Supplies, he encamped under the Cannon of *Carfa*, or *Cars* \*, a strong Fortress in *Turcomania*, not far distant from the Source of the *Euphrates*. *Kouli-Kan*, understanding that the Seraskier expected a strong Re-inforcement, and that as soon as he had received them he was to pursue and give him Battle, thought it his Business to draw him to an Engagement before the Arrival of the fresh Forces. He detached 25,000 Men from the Gros of his Army, put himself at their Head, and came up towards the Seraskier's Camp. This latter penetrating the Design of the *Persian* General, did not stir out of his Camp, but contented himself with making a Detachment of the best of his Troops, equal in

\* This Fortress is so considerable, that the Sultan, among his Titles, bears that of Lord of *Carfa*.



Number to that of *Kouli-Kan*. He gave the Command of them to a *Bassa*, whom he enjoined not to engage, but only to observe the Motions of the Enemy. *Kouli-Kan* seeing this Body approach, thought at first it had been the whole *Turkish* Army, and retired to join the Gros of his Troops: But when he was informed that it was only a Detachment, he perceived he must use some other Stratagem to draw the *Seraskier* from his Post.

For this Purpose he turned all of a sudden from the Side of *Erivan*, making a Feint to retire into *Armenia*, as if he had found himself too weak to remain in an Enemy's Country, or perceived he could not procure there a commodious Subsistence. He did not doubt but the *Seraskier*, fearing he should escape, would be immediately at his Heels. In Effect, he was informed that the *Turkish* General had decamped, and made a Shew of pursuing him, but that it was after he had been re-inforced with 30,000 Men. On this Advice *Kouli-Kan* began to think of posting himself the most advantageously, to wait for the *Turks* in his Camp; whose Army, with the additional Troops, amounted to 110,000 Men. That of *Kouli-Kan* was above 20,000 less in Number, because of the Garisons he had been obliged to leave in *Teffis* and *Erivan*. But notwithstanding this Disproportion, *Kouli-Kan* posted himself so well, that he had Room to hope he should be able, at least, to dispute the Victory a long Time with the *Turks*, if they had the Resolution to attack him.

He

He disposed his Army in this Manner. His Artillery was placed upon an Eminence, in such a Posture, that it could not be seen, but very near at Hand. On the Right and Left of the Artillery, he posted the greatest Part of his Infantry in hollow Ways, Ditches, and Woods that entirely covered them. He then, with all Expedition, had the Declivity undermined, which led from the Eminence into the Plain, and placed his Cavalry in the Plain itself. The *Turkish* Army was not long before it appeared. It arrived in the Plain *May* the 25th 1735. *Kouli Kan* retired at its Approach, and the Seraskier ordered the *Tartars* and *Spahies* to pursue him, who fell upon his Rear-Guard, where he was in Person. A smart Skirmish ensued, which did not end but with the Day: The next Day it began again, while the Seraskier made the Dispositions for a Battle. At last the *Turkish* Army advanced, ranged in Form of a Crescent. *Kouli Kan* ordered his Cavalry to be extended, and placed the Foot that were still with him in the Center. A violent Wind, which blew the Dust and Sand in the Eyes of the *Turks*, hindered them from seeing there was so small a Part of the *Persian* Infantry, and that the rest were hid in Woods and Ditches. Suspecting nothing less than this, the *Ottomans* gave the Onset with terrible Outcries. *Kouli Kan* sustained the Shock of their Cavalry, as much as was necessary to animate them to the Engagement: But at the second Charge his own Horse retired, according to their Orders, towards the Top of the Eminence; and the Infantry did the same. The *Turks* began to

*Kouli Kan's*  
Disposition to receive the  
*Turks*.

cry out *Victory* ! But the *Persian* Horse, well instructed in what they had to execute, divided in two Parts, and buried themselves in the Woods on the Right and Left. The Foot, which had been with the General from the Beginning of the Action, fled to the Top of the Hill. The *Turks* pursued them both with great Fury : And when the *Persian* General saw them far enough in the Snare, he gave the Signal for playing the Mines. They had a surprising Effect. Multitudes of Men and Horses were seen flying in the Air, who came down dead, or shattered to Pieces. Others were buried in those Gulphs which the Powder had made in the Explosion. The Horror of the *Turks* was equal to their Surprise, being intirely ignorant of this Way of Fighting. They saw the Earth open to swallow them up ; but could not comprehend how it should be, as thinking that Mines were to be dreaded in Sieges only. But what completed their Consternation, was the Artillery, which now began to play, and which was so advantageously posted, that at the first Discharge it carried off whole Ranks of the *Turkish* Squadrons. The *Persian* Infantry then issued out of the Places where they had been concealed, and falling upon the Flanks of the Enemy, gave a brisk Fire, and put them all in Disorder. The *Turkish* Cavalry, no longer able to keep their Ranks, rushed upon the *Janissaries*, and drove them into equal Confusion. Then the *Persian* Cavalry, drawing up at the Edge of the Wood, fell upon the *Turks* with an inconceivable Violence.

Nothing

Nothing was now seen but horrid Slaughter, and universal Rout, which only the Night put an end to. The 29th, at Break of Day, the *Persian* Cavalry went in pursuit of the Fugitives. Those who were the best mounted, or had the best Legs, escaped the Sword of the Victors: All the rest were massacred, except a Body of *Tartars* and *Turks*, that were hemm'd in by the *Persians*, who, weary of the Work of Death, made them all Slaves. The Loss of the *Turks* was computed at 50,000 killed or wounded, without reckoning the Prisoners. The *Persians* lost about 8000 Men. This Action, or rather Slaughter, lasted nine Hours, and the *Seraf-kier* was found among the Dead, accompanied with nine *Bassas*. Five *Bassas* were taken Prisoners, among whom was *Mehemed*, lately arrived from *Constantinople* in the *Seraf-kier's* Army, with large Remittances of Money. All the *Turkish* Artillery, consisting of 35 Pieces of Brass Cannon, came into the Hands of the Victor; as did also the Baggage, and military Chest. *Kouli Kan* ordered the Money to be distributed among the Officers and Soldiers, according to their Degrees: And it must have been an immense Sum, since the meanest *Persian* Soldier had two *Sequins* \* for his Part; without mentioning the magnificent Robes, and valuable Jewels, that were found in plundering the dead Bodies. *Kouli Kan* commanded all these Carcasses to be buried in deep Ditches, which were dug in the Field of Battle for that Purpose. He ordered Search to be made for the Bodies of

*Kouli Kan*  
gains a  
complete  
Victory.

\* Almost Twenty Shillings Sterling.

the Seraskier and the Bassas, who fell in the Action, and sent them to *Carfa* to be honourably interred.

*Gengis*  
surrenders  
to the  
*Persians*.

The City of *Gengis*, which a Body of *Persian* Troops had blocked up for some Time, surrendered on the News of this Defeat. All *Mingrelia*, which is that Part of *Georgia* which belonged to the *Ottoman Porte*, submitted to the victorious *Kouli Kan*, who treated the Princes of this Province, hitherto Vassals of the Grand Signior, with great Clemency. All *Armenia*, *Diarbeck*, and *Turcomania*, were also the Fruits of this Victory.

The *Turks* perhaps had never lost so great a Number of Troops in one Day as on this Occasion, not excepting even the Battles of *Selanckemen* and *Zenta*; and perhaps never was Victory the Source of more Conquests than this which our *Persian* had now won. When we reflect on these Things, it is impossible not to admire the Inconstancy of Fortune. It was but six or seven Years ago, that the Kingdom of *Persia* had been in the most deplorable State; torn to Pieces within by Civil Wars, despised without, and exposed to a thousand Affronts from all her Neighbours. Now behold her in a quite different Situation; resuming her antient Courage; in profound Tranquility at home, and formidable abroad. All this must be attributed to only one Hero, the invincible *Kouli Kan*.

AR ebel-  
lion stirred  
up in *Per-*  
*sia* by the  
*Turks*.

The *Turks*, seeing to what Condition they were reduced, considered how to procure a Diverfion which might divide the Arms of this General, who was upon the Brink of stripping them of their best Provinces. They made



made use of one *Laccia* for this Purpose, the Leader of a Gang of Thieves who infested the Frontiers of *Persia*. They sent him large Sums of Money, which enabled him to encrease his Band to the Number of 10 or 12,000 lusty Fellows, Part of whom were *Turkish Janissaries*.

*Kouli Kan*, on the News of this Rebel's Progress, left the greatest Part of his Army under the Conduct of an experienced General, and sat out at the Head of the rest to go and reduce him. He came up with him in the *Curdistan*, gave him Battle, and a Defeat. *Laccia* however escaped, got together the Remains of his little Army, and had the Courage to appear again in the Field. *Kouli Kan* allowed him no Time to repair his Loss, but in a second Engagement intirely dissipated his Forces, and took their Leader, who was impaled. Several of his Men suffered the same Fate, who were taken in the Pursuit.

And happily extinguished by *Kouli Kan*.

After so many glorious Exploits, *Kouli Kan* returned to *Ispahan* at the Beginning of the Year 1736, having now formed a Design to make himself King of *Persia*. The young King *Abas*, yet an Infant, was of a very feeble and delicate Complexion, and seemed also inclinable to Folly. Some pretend that *Kouli Kan* had ordered Potions to be given him, in order to weaken both his Body and his Understanding. Be that as it will, the Regent sent for the Grandees of the Kingdom about the Middle of *February*. Many Generals, and other principal Officers of the Army, were already at *Ispahan*: And as soon as the Nobility were arrived there, he

Design of this General upon the Crown of *Persia*.

or-

ordered them all to assemble in one of the Halls of the royal Palace. Here he made them a Speech, which held a Quarter of an Hour, and run mightily on the Fatigues he had undergone in the three last Campaigns. He complained that many Districts of the Kingdom refused to obey his Orders, under Pretence that the King's Service did not require it; was very copious on the Disgusts he had met with in the Discharge of his Office of Regent; and concluded with declaring that he was resolved to resign it, in favour of him whom the Assembly should think the most worthy.

This Declaration surpris'd the most unwary Minds; but those of deeper Penetration saw what it drove at. They well enough perceived that he aspired at something more than the Title and Authority of a Regent, and that, if I may be allowed the Expression, he only took a Step or two back, to jump the further forward. In reality, *Kouli Kan* aspired to the Crown; but was loth to be branded with the Name of *Usurper*. He wished they would offer it him by a free Election, without the least Constraint: And he flattered himself, that this could not fail of coming to pass, in an Assembly composed chiefly of his own Creatures, who owed their Fortunes to him. As for the other, he had treated them with so much Lenity, that it was not likely they should form the least Opposition.

His Design opposed.

In the mean time those clear-sighted People, who had penetrated the Views of *Kouli Kan*, did not so much as whisper their Suspicions, for fear of exposing themselves to his Resentment: But as they were not well

well satisfied neither to have him for their King, they intreated him to continue in his Office of Regent, at least till the Majority of the young King: And that their Arguments for his so doing might be the more pleasing, they intermixed them with Encomiums on his Valour, his Prudence, and his Goodness. Their Harangues had a quite contrary Effect from what they had expected. *Kouli Kan*, in his Turn, seeing through their Intentions, as they had done through his, cunningly kept on the Mask, and persisted in his Resolution of laying down his Office. Immediately a low Murmur was heard through the Assembly, begun by the Officers of the Army, who could not bear to think of any other Commander than *Kouli Kan*. They declared they would obey no Man living but him.

“ Well then, cried out one among them, since he will be no longer Regent, we must make him King. What Necessity is there that we should rest all our Hopes on an infirm and tender Infant? Are we desirous of such another Reign as that of *Schah Hussein*? Would the *Persians* be again governed by Women and Eunuchs? Had they rather see themselves pillaged by such infamous Ministers, their Estates ravaged by a hundred different Factions, than to elect a Hero for their King, who has delivered them from the Oppression of the *Aghwans*, and the Insults of the *Turks*? In order to be a King, is it not enough to merit a Crown, unless a Man be also born with it? I put the Question to you, *Persians*, all that are here present, in what Condition had we been, if our General had not been sent us

A Speech  
in his Fa-  
vour by  
one of the  
Assembly.

“ by

“ by the great Prophet who is Guardian of  
 “ *Persia* ? Every one in this Assembly,  
 “ perhaps, had either been ere now depriv-  
 “ ed of Life, or driven from his Family and  
 “ Fortune by that infinite Number of Ty-  
 “ rants that had set up among us. Let us  
 “ at once then unanimously acknowledge  
 “ that Hero, who has freed the Kingdom,  
 “ who has redeemed and even won it with  
 “ the Point of his Sword, for our lawful So-  
 “ verelgn.”

Which is  
 applauded.

This Harangue was applauded by all the  
 Generals there present. The Ministers who  
 did not approve it, far from opposing his E-  
 lection, were the first to cry ought that  
*Thamas Kouli Kan*, and he only, deserved to  
 be King of *Persia*.

He is pro-  
 claimed  
 King.

*Kouli Kan* continued his Diffimulation.  
 As soon as the Murmur was over, he re-  
 presented, that Royalty was a Burden too  
 heavy for him, who had resolved to pass the  
 Residue of his Days in Retirement, as soon as  
 he had compelled the *Turks* to an honoura-  
 ble Peace, for the Advantage of *Persia*. But,  
 spite of his affected Modesty, a pleasing Joy  
 was discernible on his Countenance, which  
 sufficiently testified that the Choice of the  
 Assembly was far from being disagreeable,  
 and that his Refusal was purely a Matter of  
 Form. For this Reason the great Men pre-  
 sent, without shewing any regard to his Eva-  
 sions, proclaimed him King of *Persia*. At  
 last his Reluctance gave way to their Impor-  
 tunity: But he protested at the same Time,  
 that as soon as young *Abas* should be of Age  
 to govern, he would restore to him the  
 Crown, which he now willingly accepted at  
 the

the Solicitation of the Grandees, for the Good of the Kingdom. Vain Protestation, and made with no other View but to appease the Partizans of the Royal Family!

When *Kouli Kan* had accepted the Sovereignty, he was led up and placed upon the Throne of the Sophies, where the High-priest put the Crown on his Head with the usual Ceremony. He was saluted King by all the Assembly. The Ministers of State, Generals of the Army, and Nobility there present, severally took the Oath of Fidelity, swearing to maintain him upon the Throne of *Persia*, against all Competitors, at the Peril of their Lives and Fortunes.

The Citizens of *Ispahan* were informed, by the Acclamations within the Palace, of the new King's Election. They applauded what was done, and testified their Approbation of the Choice by Illuminations, which lasted several Days. But the Testimonies of Joy at this News were no where greater than in the Army, who discovered their Interest in this Event by the Discharge of their Artillery and Small Arms. All the Provinces likewise signified their Satisfaction by public Rejoicings, which, if they were sincere, were rather an Effect of the People's Love of Novelty, than of any Idea they could have of a real Advantage.

*Kouli Kan*, willing to shew that the Splendor of a Throne had not effaced the Memory of his Original, re-assumed his former Name of *Nadir*. This was a Proof indeed of his Modesty, but which does not atone for what there was odious in his Usurpation.

He re-assumes the Name of *Nadir*.



The History I have now given of *Schah Nadir's* Inauguration comes from good Authority, and I dare assure the Reader that he may depend on its being authentic.

It was not many Days after his Accession to the Crown, before the new King gave his Subjects to understand, that he should have no Desire to resign it back to Prince *Abas*, or any one else. All that boasted of their being descended from the Royal Family, to the Number of about fifty, were secured by his Order; and it hath since been given out, that he had them all privately put to Death.

His Ufur-  
pation cen-  
sured.

Some endeavour to justify *Kouli Kan's* Conduct, with regard to the Descendants of the *Sophies*, by pretending that he did well to dethrone *Schah Thamas*, who had shewn himself unworthy of the Royal Dignity; and that with regard to the young Prince his Son, his natural Imbecillity, both of Body and Mind, rendered him incapable of Reigning. Without taking upon me to refute these Reasons methodically, I will only say, that admitting it had been lawful to depose *Schah Thamas*, it was far otherwise with regard to his Son; and that nothing could possibly authorise such an Outrage, since the Prince was too young for any Thing certain to be determined, either as to the Weakness of his Constitution, or the Incapacity of his Understanding. Have we not seen, do we not every Day see sickly Children, who in an Age more advanced grow strong and robust; and others, who in their Infancy seem of weak Intellects, that at the Age of Maturity turn out great Genius's

I thought proper to connect together all that relates to *Kouli-Kan's* Accession to the Throne of *Persia*, before I came to speak of the Preparations he made for the Campaign of 1736, notwithstanding the Report that had been current of an approaching Peace. In Effect, the *Turks*, disheartened by so many Disgraces and Losses, observing the extraordinary Preparations of *Kouli-Kan*, and foreseeing that they should soon be attacked by the *Russians* and *Germans*, had made Proposals for an Accomodation to our Hero, at that Time only Regent of the Kingdom of *Persia*, and who, having his particular Views, testified his Readiness to treat. He well knew, that this would be the most proper Time to get himself acknowledged King by the *Turks*, who being upon the Brink of a War with two powerful *European* Nations, would not be in a Condition to refuse any Thing on the Side of *Persia*. Negotiations of Peace between him and the *Turks*.

The *Turks* wished for nothing so much, as to be delivered from the *Persian* War. It is always the most expensive War they engage in, and the most fatal to their Troops, on Account of the Distempers they are liable to. *Kouli-Kan* nominated *Abdul-Backi-Kan*, one of his Favourites, to treat of a Peace in his Name with the *Ottoman* Ministers. The Contents of his Instructions are not known; nor have we any better Information with regard to the Person of this Plenipotentiary. All we know is, that he was an intimate Confident of *Kouli-Kan's*, and privy to his Design of making himself Master of the Throne. It was for this Reason that he proceeded very slowly in his Journey, not de-

Why his  
Ambassa-  
dor feigns  
himself  
sick.

firing to reach the *Turkish* Territories before he heard the Success of his Master's Enterprize.

As the News of this Affair did not arrive according to his Expectation, and the Ambassador was already near the Frontiers of the *Ottoman* Empire, he feigned himself sick, and proceeded no farther till the Scene was unravelled, which he knew was then playing at *Ispahan*. When he was ascertained of *Kouli-Kan's* Election to the Dignity of King of *Persia*, he imparted the News to the *Ottoman Porte*; informing that Court, at the same Time, that he could not appear there, before the Grand Signior's Ambassador was arrived at *Ispahan*, and had acknowledged *Thomas Kouli-Kan*, on the Part of his Highness, for lawful King or *Schah* of *Persia*. This Incident gave great Uneasiness at the *Porte*: The Pride of the Sultan, on the one Hand, would not permit him to acknowledge the new King, and treat with him as an Equal; and the Terror of *Kouli-Kan*, on the other, made them extremely cautious not to affront him. Reasons of State at last prevailed, and it was agreed to acknowledge the new *Schah*. This Resolution was engrossed in a public Instrument, and sent to the *Schah Nadir's* Ambassador, who immediately communicated it to his Master, and received Orders back to continue his Journey to *Constantinople*. He was still to proceed however by very short Stages, and to stop at *Bolu*, nine Days Journey from *Constantinople*, till he received new Orders, and till he had certain Advice that the *Turkish* Ambassador had acknowledged *Schah Nadir* for King of *Persia*, and brought the same Acknowledgment in his

Cre-

Credentials, under the Grand Signior's Hand.

The Seraskier *Achmet* Bassa was sent Ambassador from the *Porte*, on this Occasion, to the *Schah*. Here follows a Translation of the Full Powers granted him by the Sultan, a Copy of which was sent into *Holland* by their High-Mightinesses Ambassador.

*Most honoured and most illustrious Minister of the Affairs of our Empire, our most wise and most faithful Councillor, thrice happy Wali of Natolia, my Seraskier and Vizir in Asia, Achmet Bassa, whose Renown and Happiness we wish everlasting.*

The Grand Signior's Full Powers to his Ambassador.

“H A V I N G considered that the Differences between our sublime *Porte* and the Kingdom of *Persia* have caused the Desolation of divers Provinces, and the Ruin of many People in both Empires, the Bowels of our Compassion have been moved for the Misfortunes of so many innocent Persons, and have inclined us to renew the Union which ought to be between two People who profess the same Religion, and to change the Complaints of the Inhabitants whom War has laid Waste, into Benedictions for the Repose we would procure them, according to the Will of God, and the Wishes of our good Subjects.

We declare that as to the Agreement concerning Religion, and the Regulation of the Frontiers of the two Empires, proposed by the most serene *Schah* (who shines like a Star, and whose Enterprises may God prosper!) our Intention is that the Treaty made between *Persia* and our Predecessor *Amurath* IV.

should be the Basis of that which we would now conclude.

But as the most serene *Schah* has given us to understand, that he desires absolutely to put an End to the Differences of the Sects which divide the *Mahometan* Religion, promising to give the necessary Orders for that Purpose thorough the Extent of his Kingdom ; and as he has at the same Time intreated us to add some new Points in Form of Preliminaries to the Treaty of *Amurath IV.* as well for the Good of Religion, as the Interests of the two Courts, having already dispatched on his Part the illustrious *Abdul-Backi-Kan*, to come to our Court in Quality of his Plenipotentiary ; we have ordered this Instrument to be drawn up, in which we have caused to be inserted the three Preliminary Points which we are willing to consent to with regard to Religion.

### I.

We will that the *Persians* have free Liberty to make the Pilgrimage of *Mecca*, and visit the other holy Places which are in the Countries under our Dominion, without the least Hindrance or Damage from any one, on any Pretence whatsoever. We will that they freely pass and repass through the Provinces of our Empire, without paying any Tribute or Custom.

### II.

The *Schah*, on his Part, to terminate the religious Disputes in *Persia*, shall abolish the Sects of *Schienski* and *Syneiski*, and tolerate that of *Schawarmski*, which acknowledges the four Successors of *Mahomet*, *Abubecker*, *Omar*, *Osman*, and *Ali* : Nor shall he suffer any



any one to blaspheme the Names of those holy Persons.

III.

As the *Schah* has banished the Sect of *Sunni*, which only troubled the Consciences of his People continually with Disputes, and moreover has acknowledged us the Successor of *Mahomet* in Religion, we acknowledge him also for the lawful *Schah* of *Persia*. And we at the same Time give to thee full Power to sign the Treaty in our Name with the Ambassador of the *Schah*, in the Place where you shall meet together: And after the Exchange of the Treaty, thou shalt send back to us the Vizir *Horam Kwaley*, with the *Persian* Ambassador and his noble Retinue, defraying all their Expences upon the Road to the Place of our Residence. When thou shalt have consented to the Articles of the Treaty, thou shalt forget nothing to re-establish a good Understanding between the two Courts, to the Exclusion of the *Russian* Infidels, whom all good *Mussulmans* ought to detest.

By so doing thou shalt merit the Applause and Acknowledgment of True Believers. Given at *Constantinople* the 8th of the Moon *Zilchidefi*, the Year 1148."

*I* Casi Asker Muhamed do certify that this Copy is conformable to the Grand Sultan's Original.

In the mean time the *Persian* Ambassador, accompanied by the Bassa of *Erzerum*, and a Retinue of 200 Persons, arrived on the 6th of *August* at *Scutari*, near *Constantinople*, and took up his Lodging in the House of the

The *Persian* Ambassador conducted to an Audience in Ge- Pomp.

General of the Bombardiers, where an Apartment was prepared for him. The *Kiaya* of the *Kaimacan*\* came thither to compliment him in his Master's Name. On the 10th of *August*, the *Kaimacan* having resolved to give him Audience, the Ambassador went on Board a Galley with the Marine *Bassa*. He was received into it under the Discharge of the Cannon. As he passed by *Leander's* Tower, he was saluted by five Pieces of Artillery there mounted. When he arrived over-against the Seraglio, he was complimented by a Discharge of the Cannon from all the Gallies there at Anchor. He landed at the Custom-House, where he found many of the Sultan's Officers ready to receive him, who made him a Present of 120 Horses magnificently caparisoned, out of his Highness's Stable, for himself and his Train. The Ambassador rested about an Hour at the Custom-House, and then proceeded in this Order. A Company of 100 *Janissaries*, in their Habits of Ceremony, went foremost. After them came the *Simen Bassa*, between two *Tchorbadgi*, and sixty of the Sultan's *Chiaous*†. Twelve

\* The *Kaimacan* is Governor of *Constantinople*, and performs the Office of Grand Vizir in that Minister's Absence. There is also a *Kaimacan* in the Army, who has the Rank of Lieutenant to the Grand Vizir.

† The *Chiaous* are a Sort of subaltern Judges, whose Business is to terminate particular Differences between Man and Man. They follow the Grand Signior in the Field. Their Arms are a Sabre, a Bow and Arrows, and a Staff like that of  
our

Twelve of the Ambassador's *Chiaous*, with Turbans adorned with Ostriches' Feathers. His *Kiaya*; his Master of the Horse; his Se-lictar, with a naked Sabre on his Shoulder; Sixty-four Fusileers on Foot, marching in two Lines, with their Arms on their Shoulders; two Pages, with Maces; the *Chiaou Bechi*; two led Horses: The Ambassador alone on Horseback, dressed in a *Persian Habit* turned up with Sable; his Iman, and his Secretary, with the credential Letters in his Hand. The Procession was closed by 86 *Persians*, richly dressed.

The *Kaimacan* regaled the Ambassador with a Present of the most exquisite Perfumes. At his Return from the Audience, the same Order was observed as in going. The Wind being somewhat high, the Gallies could not possibly row up to *Scutari*; so that the Ambassador was obliged to go on board a Saick belonging to the *Bostanga-Bachi*, and mounted with twelve Pieces of Cannon, which carried him to *Scutari*, with the same Ceremony that had been shewn him in coming.

From that Day the *Persian* Ambassador received extraordinary Honours at *Constanti-* Conclusion of the Treaty. Conditions on both Sides.  
*nople*, equal to what *Kouli Kan* could have expected, had he been there in Person. The Peace was soon concluded: And indeed the Porte had great need of it, being at that Time attack'd by two of the most formidable Christian Powers. The Treaty was con-

our Couriers. Their Superior is the *Chiaou Bassa*, who has the Charge of the State Prisoners. When the Sultan is determined to have the Head of any great Man, the *Chiaous* perform the Execution.

cluded

cluded and signed in the great Mosque of St. *Sophia*. By this Peace Things were re-established between the two Empires upon the antient Footing.

The *Turks* restored all that they had conquer'd from the *Persians*, from *Schah Abas* the Great exclusively, down to *Schah Thomas*; and the *Persians* gave up to the *Turks* whatever they had dismember'd from their antient Territories. The Sultan engaged to oblige those of his Subjects who had natural *Persians* among their Slaves, to set them at Liberty in the Space of two Months; as well those whom they had bought, as those they had taken in War either by Land or Sea. His Highness's Edict on this Occasion farther declared, that it was expressly forbidden, under pain of corporal Punishment, for the Merchants who dealt in Slaves, to buy or sell, for the future, any *Persian* of either Sex in the *Basars* or Markets; enjoining them to bring all such to the *Miry*, who should pay fifty *Piasters per Head*, of the Sultan's Money, to redeem and set them at Liberty, that they might retire wherever they thought proper.

The *Persian* Ambassador's Audience of Leave.

On the 22d of *October*, 1736, the *Persian* Ambassador had his Audience of Leave of the Grand Signior, who received him with great Marks of Distinction. He continued to pay Visits to the Grandees of the *Ottoman* Court till the 14th of *December*, when he set out from *Scutari* in his Way to *Persia*. He was escorted and maintained at the Sultan's Expence to the Frontiers of the Kingdom. Several *Turkish* Ecclesiasticks accompanied him home, who were to endeavour at a Union

nion between the two Sects of *Omar* and *Ali*. He received all imaginable Honours upon the Road. At his Departure, the Sultan made him a Present of 30,000 Piaſters in Money, which is about 50,000 *French* Crowns, and a Sabre richly ſet with Diamonds; beſides delivering up to him 700 *Persian* Slaves, of both Sexes. All the *Grandees* imitated his Highneſs, and rivalled one another in their Preſents to his Excellency.

Some Time after this Ambaſſador's Return into *Persia*, the Grand Signior called home his Plenipotentiary, and ſent another Miniſter to *Schah Nadir*. But the *Persian* Monarch, thinking his Ambaſſador might have made a more advantageous Peace with the *Turks*, appeared to be diſſatisfied with his Conduct, and teſtified his Reſentment by reſuſing at firſt to ratify the Treaty. In all likelihood he would have choſen to renew the War, if he had not apprehended the Factions that were forming againſt him, of which he had certain Intelligence. In the mean Time the Ambaſſador he had ſent to *Petersburgh*, a little before his Acceſſion to the Crown, was received by the Empreſs of *Ruſſia* with great Marks of Diſtinction: And when he had aſcended the Throne, he diſpatched an Expreſs to this Ambaſſador, with a Letter to her Imperial Maſteſty. When his Excellency obtained an Audience of that Princeſs on this Occaſion, he delivered himſelf in a Speech to this Effect.

“ Moſt Auguſt Sovereign of all the *Ruſſians*, equal to the Moon in Happineſs and Power, who have Armies as innumerable as the Stars of Heaven, and who wear a Crown

The Peace he makes is not pleaſing to his Maſter.



The  
Speech of  
*Kouli*  
*Kan's* Am-  
bassador  
to the Em-  
press of  
*Russia*.

“ Crown as brilliant as the Sun, may the God  
“ of our Fathers ever bless your Govern-  
“ ment. My Lord and Master the Sultan of  
“ *Persia*, *Nadir-Ali-Bagatyr Chan*, whose  
“ Throne may God establish, having resolv-  
“ ed to renew the antient Friendship be-  
“ tween your Court and that of *Persia*, and  
“ willing to give Proofs of his Affection to  
“ your Imperial Majesty, hath sent me, the  
“ Lord *Migir Ali-Bec*, a Native of *Daghestan*,  
“ with a Letter, in which my Master  
“ the *Schah* of *Persia* notifies to your Ma-  
“ jesty his Accession to the Throne of the  
“ *Persian* Monarchy. I beseech your Ma-  
“ jesty, as the most humble of her Slaves,  
“ after having cast your Eyes on the said  
“ Letter, to give an Answer to it in Writing,  
“ and order it to be remitted to his most hum-  
“ ble Slave, that he may communicate it to  
“ the *Schah* his Lord and Master.”

The Empress caused the following Answer  
to be given by Prince *Czerkaskoi*, Privy-  
Councillor.

The Em-  
press's  
Answer.

“ Her Imperial Majesty has heard with  
“ great Satisfaction of the Elevation of *Schah*  
“ *Nadir* to the August Throne of *Per-*  
“ *sia*, and heartily felicitates him upon his  
“ happy Success. She prays God long to  
“ preserve that Prince, for the Glory and  
“ Aggrandization of the Kingdom of *Persia*.  
“ And as her Majesty entertains a great  
“ Esteem for the *Schah* your Master, on  
“ Account of the Valour and Prudence  
“ he has manifested in all his Actions, she  
“ is resolved to contribute all in her Power  
“ to establish him on his Throne, and for  
“ the Good of the Dominions of which he

“ is

“ is become Sovereign. Of this her Imperial Majesty will herself assure him, in the Answer she will return to his Letter with all Expedition.”

Some Days after the two *Persian* Ministers were admitted to another Audience, in which the *Daghestan* Lord, who delivered *Schah Nadir's* Letter, received the Empress's Answer. He then took Leave of her Imperial Majesty, and prepared for his Return into *Persia*. The 27th of *July* he went from *Petersburgh* to *Cronschlott*\*, and came back two Days after. A few Days more he employed to see the Rarities at *Petersburgh*; among others, whatever was most curious in the Academy of Sciences; the Mathematical and Philosophical Instruments, the Printing-house, the Library, the Anatomy-hall, the Physic-Garden, &c.

He took the Road of *Persia* in the Month of *December*. *Schah Nadir*, all this while, appeared every Day dissatisfied with the Peace his Minister had negotiated at *Constantinople*. He refused to ratify it, till the Beginning of an Insurrection among the *Aghwans* at *Candahar* obliged him to comply.

No sooner was it done, but the *Schah* A new  
turned his Resentment towards that turbulent Rebellion  
Nation, and marched against the City of in *Persia*.  
*Candahar* with 50,000 Men. The Expedition was attended with some Inconveniences,

\* *Cronschlott* or *Cronschlofs* is a *Russian* Fort in *Carelsia*, built in the midst of the Sea, four Leagues from *Petersburgh*. The Czar *Peter the Great* raised it to cover his Conquests, and the *Russian* Fleet is usually laid up at this Place.

notwithstanding the Precautions he had taken that his Troops. should want nothing. When he was within a few Leagues of the Place, he learned that 7 or 8000 Rebels were encamped under the Cannon of the Ram-parts. He sent several Parties to observe their Disposition, which when he had learned, he marched and attacked them. The Rebels being well intrenched, defended themselves bravely ; but after a long and bloody Battle, the Fortune of *Schah Nadir* prevailed. The Intrenchments were forced, and the Rebels, pushed on every Side, took to their Heels. A great Part of them jumped into the Ditches that encompassed the City, and were there drowned. The rest were either taken, killed, or got within the Walls.

*Kouli Kan*  
besieges  
*Candahar*.

After the Army had reposed a little, *Schah Nadir* opened the Trenches before *Candahar*. The Siege continued almost six Weeks, the *Aghwans* disputing every Foot of Ground : But at last, the *Persian* Artillery having made a considerable Breach, they began to storm it. The Rebels received them with great Courage, till finding the Place must of Necessity be carried, they demanded Quarter. The *Schah* made them surrender at Discretion ; ordered some of the most mutinous to be impaled ; disarmed the rest ; left a good Garrison to keep them in Subjection, and issued out such excellent Orders, that he had room to flatter himself they would never think of another Revolt. The Noise of this Expedition spread such a Terror among the Malecontents, that they submitted more than ever to *Schah Nadir*.

He

He returned to *Ispahan* about the Middle of the Year 1738. Scarce was he arrived there, before he ordered his Minister, who had negotiated the Peace at *Constantinople*, to be arrested, and with him the new Ambassador of the *Porte*. He had them both brought into his Presence, and commanded twenty Bastinades to be given his own Plenipotentiary, upon the Soles of his Feet. That being over, he asked the *Turkish* Ambassador what he had brought with him; who answering, that he was charged with a Letter from the Sultan, the *Schah* replied, that it was not worth while to come so far to bring a Letter; at the same Time falling on his own Minister, and beating him heartily. He then told the *Turk*, that for his Part, he had nothing to fear, being too old for a Bastinading: But he would have him to know, that he was extremely enraged with the *Ottoman* Court, for having taken Advantage of his Plenipotentiary's Stupidity, by concluding a Peace with *Persia*, of which they alone had the Advantage, notwithstanding they had been beaten. After this, he let him go out of his Presence, telling him, that he was at Liberty either to go or stay. Some Advices say since, that he afterwards had his own Ambassador beheaded.

The *Ottoman* Court, informed of this Affair, did not think fit to resent it. Engaged in a burthensome War with the Christian Powers, she shut her Eyes at this Affront upon her Ambassador, and thought of nothing but appeasing the *Schah*. She accomplished it at last, by means of the Presents she made to those about his Person, who found

*Kouli Kan's* Severity to his own Plenipotentiary, and Contempt of the *Turkish* Ambassador.

The *Ottoman* Court does not take the Affront.

the Secret so to divert their Master's Mind from this Object, that he forgot his Resentment, and applied to the establishing himself on the Throne, by securing those within the Kingdom, before he engaged in any more foreign Wars. He left the *Russians* to dispute the Field with the *Turks*, and was not displeased to see those two Powers so mutually engaged in weakening each other, resolving to fall afterwards upon which he thought proper; and if he has not hitherto put that Design in Execution, there wants no other Reason to account for it, than his Quarrel last Year with the Great Mogul. As the Occurrences of this War are not yet perfectly known, I will not undertake to relate them: Far from adopting what the Gazettes have with so little Foundation published; That *Schah Nadir* had deposed the Mogul, taken Possession of his Throne, and left the Regency of *Persia* to his eldest Son.

Particulars concerning the Person of *Kouli Kan*.

I will conclude this History with some Particulars concerning the Person of *Kouli-Kan*, now *Schah Nadir*. He is about fifty-five Years of Age; somewhat above a middle Stature; of a strong Constitution, and capable of the greatest Fatigues. He is fatter than the *Orientals* usually are; loves Wine, and all Sorts of strong Liquors; is very much given to Women, but not to the Neglect of the Affairs of his Government, to which he passes from Scenes of Pleasure with admirable Facility. He is every Day seen in public; a Thing before unheard of in *Persia*, where the Kings seemed to reign for no other End, but to shut themselves up in their Palaces. He often rides thro' the Streets of *Ispahan* on Horse-back,



back, and frequently stops to ask Questions of any one he meets. He reviews his Troops in Person, and makes them exercise in his Presence. He keeps them to admirable good Order and Discipline, which does not in the least lessen their Affection to him. His Family consists of two Sons and three Daughters; but he has many other Children by several Concubines. His eldest Son is about thirty Years of Age, and was not long ago Governor of *Mached*. The Age of the youngest is unknown; but it is certain that he is Governor of *Herat*, the Capital of a District in the Kingdom of *Chorasan*. *Schah Nadir's* second Wife is of the Family of the *Sophies*, some say the Sister of *Schah Thamas*. He has had by her two Sons and two Daughters. His Father is dead, but not till since he had the Satisfaction to see his Son Generalissimo of the *Persian* Armies. His Mother was living in *October*, 1736. He has two Brothers, one of them Governor of *Kirman*, and the other of *Tauris*. He has put his Troops on the *European* Footing, and allures into his Service Officers and Engineers of the *English*, *French*, *Italian*, and other Nations. His Liberality gains him the Affection of all Strangers. So little covetous is he, that he gave an Engineer a Gratuity of 100,000 Tomans, for having made some Brass Pontoons, the Use of which the *Schah* was before unacquainted with.

A certain Greatness of Soul has been remark'd in him, beyond what could be expected in a Usurper: For though he has sometimes acted a quite contrary Part for Reasons of State, it is nevertheless certain that he has at other

other Times shewn Tokens of Generosity. He has treated Prisoners of War with a great deal of Lenity: He has bestowed the Honours of Burial on the Dead; as in the Cases of *Topal Osman Bassa*, and the Seraskier *Abdulla Cuprogli*, whose Bodies he had taken up, in order to be interred according to their Dignity. He has those Ideas of Society which every reasonable Man ought to have; does not believe that a different Manner of Thinking in religious Matters ought to disunite Mankind, formed as they are for Commerce and Conversation; tolerates equally all the Christian Sects, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Papists*, and *Armenians*, provided they advance the Interest of Trade in his Dominions. When he took *Teflis*, the Capital of *Georgia*, the *Capuchin* Missionaries there established came to pay him their Compliments. He demanded whether they were *French* or *Germans*: To which having answered, that they were *French*, he told them he had a great deal of Friendship for their Nation, and a very high Esteem for the King of *France*, of whose Power he said he had received good Information. He made them sit upon magnificent Carpets, treated them with great Politeness, and assured them, that the *French* Nation should always find in him a hearty Protector. The *Capuchins*, seeing him so well disposed, took this Opportunity to ask his Protection for the *French* Jesuits at *Scamachi*, and the Church they were there in Possession of. When the *Schah* heard the Name of *Scamachi*, he gave a Sort of malignant Smile, and told them, that the City they spoke of had merited his Indignation,

and

and he was resolved to raze it to the Gound, and exterminate the Inhabitants: That as for the Jesuits there establisshed, he would do them no Hurt, but assign them another Place for their Habitation; that was not under the divine Malediction, as *Scamachi* was. The *Capuchins*, at taking Leave, presented the *Schah* with some Confections and Con-serves of their Preparation. He received them graciously, and gave them forty Ducats; telling them very politely, that he was sorry he could not, in a better Manner, return his Acknowledgment for the Regard they seemed to have for his Health; but that, unluckily, he had no more Money about him.

A little Time after his Elevation to the Throne of *Persia*, he was acknowledged for lawful *Schah* by the Grand Mogul.

In this Manner did *Kouli Kan*, a humble Shepherd, raise himself to the supreme Dignity of the most antient and most flourishing Kingdom in the World, where he yet reigns respected by his Neighbours, feared and esteemed by his Subjects, and adored by his Soldiers.

F I N I S.

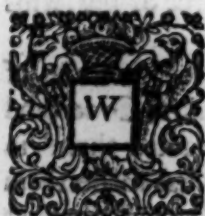
The first of these is the fact that the  
 Government has been unable to secure  
 the necessary funds to carry out its  
 policy of non-interference. This is  
 due to the fact that the Government  
 has been unable to secure the necessary  
 funds to carry out its policy of non-  
 interference. This is due to the fact  
 that the Government has been unable  
 to secure the necessary funds to carry  
 out its policy of non-interference.

2141.4



THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
THAMAS KOULI KAN.

*Part the Second.*



WE have seen, in the first Part of this History, in what manner *Kouli Kan* delivered the Kingdom of *Persia* from the Enemies that had over-run it; how he afterwards placed himself upon the Throne of the *Sophis*, vanquished the *Turks* in several Engagements, and at last besieged and took *Candabar*, the Center of the Rebellion.

I was obliged to stop there, in order to wait till Time, and the Memoirs that I then

B

wanted,



wanted, might enable me to continue my Work. I had indeed heard of an Irruption made by this Conqueror into the Dominions of the *Great Mogul*; but as I had not good Information and Assurance of the Facts that were rumoured abroad, I did not think fit to extend my Narrative any farther, for fear of amusing the Publick with fictitious Stories.

I am now no longer in this State of Uncertainty. I have not only a faithful Relation of all that occurred in the Expedition which *Kouli-Kan* made into the *Mogul* Empire, but likewise several Letters of this Hero's writing, Copies of which the *Dutch* Merchants, inhabiting in *Persia*, received from *Camber-Ali* the *Persian* Secretary of State. These Letters were first translated into *Low-Dutch*, and it is from that Language that I render them into *French*.

It must have been remarked from the several Particulars related in the preceding Part of our History, that *Schach-Nadir* is not only brave in his Person, but very crafty also and politic, having joined to the Force of his Arms a consummate Prudence.

*Kouli-Kan* Before him the *Persians* were ignorant of introduced the first Principles of Military Art, Order, and Discipline. *Kouli-Kan* has instructed them in among his these, and, what is yet more, has made them Troops. conform to his Regulations. These Barbarians

had formerly no other Way of fighting than the *Tartars*; they set up loud Cries, and turned their Backs with as much Facility as they first fell on. They now make their Attack in Silence, and keep their Ground in an Action as well as the best Troops in *Europe*.

They

## THAMAS KOULI KAN.

B

They were also unacquainted with the modern Manner of building Places of Defence: A few Towers of a very indifferent Construction, a scurvy Trench, and a Rampart of small Extent, made all the Fortification of their garrison'd Towns. We now begin to see among them Bastions, half-Moons, and other regular Works, as in this Part of the World.

Their Artillery was still the worst in order He has an of any thing amongst them, and they wanted Artillery good Cannoneers as well as good Engineers. well supplied. *Kouli Kan* has an Artillery extremely well supplied. He gives us an account of it himself, in a Letter that he wrote to the Governor of *Isfahan* upon the Taking of *Candahar*; (1) a Translation of which here follows,

*A Mandate (2) sent by Schach Nadir from Candahar to Hattembeck, Governor of Isfahan; a Copy whereof was sent to Bengal by the Officers of the India Company, and brought by two Couriers to the said Company, the 6th of May, 1738.* An Ordinance to the Governor of *Isfahan*.

**B**E it known to *Hattembeck* Governor of *Isfahan*, (after having assured him of our Royal Favour) that, by the Blessing of God, since the Day that this great Kingdom of *Persia* has fallen to our lot, every thing has succeeded according to our Wish, and that, by the Permission of the Most High, our Arm is become so powerful, that no Fortrefs has been able to

(1) Vid. *part I. p. 158.* where the Siege of this Place is spoken of.

(2) This is the Meaning of the *Persian* Word *Regam*.

The HISTORY of

withstand it : Mountains have seemed as Chaff, ( 2 ) and the Sea as a Valley before our Royal Countenance ; and it is by us that these things are done.

The Inhabitants of *Candahar* having revolted against us, and obliged us to march against them, before we laid Siege to their City, we put them in mind of the Passages in the *Koran* against Rebel Subjects, and exhorted them to desist from their pernicious Revolt, turn aside from their evil Ways, and enter again into their Duty of Allegiance. Notwithstanding this, they continued in their abominable Obstinacy, and would not renounce their criminal Enterprize, confiding without doubt in the Strength of their Bulwarks. Their Leaders, like a Flock of black Ravens, lifted up their hideous Voices, and rejected our Counsels and Exhortations with Contempt and Mockery. For this reason, seeing that neither the Commandments of God, nor our Counsels and Exhortations had any effect, and that this obstinate People took pleasure in their evil designs, and grew more and more pertinacious, I have at last suffered my Wrath to break forth against them. Resolved as I was to become Master of their Fortrefs, I ordered my Troops to advance, and commanded them to attack the Quarter called *Sangee*, and the Redoubt, which stands upon the Eminence on the side called *Deda*.

My Soldiers having happily got possession of the said Quarter of *Sangee*, I planted my Mortars thereupon, and threw Bombs into the City incessantly, the one following the other as close as Thunder follows Lightning.

This

This continued till the third of the Month *Sjebejed Tulharoem*, (3) when I ordered my Army to attack the Fortrefs by Storm, and to bring up my Artillery, which continued playing without intermiffion upon the Redoubt on the fide of *Deda*, of which I could not as yet make myfelf Mafter. While my Field-pieces thundered upon it, I commanded the *Bagtians*, who ferve in my Army, to prepare for giving the Affault on that fide: Which they executed with fo much Courage and Intrepidity, that they got poffeffion of it, in fpite of all the Efforts of the Rebels. And as the News of this happy Succels cannot but give great Joy and Satisfaction to all the well-affected in our Kingdom, who have waited for it with Impatience, I have difpatched *Mahmet Alibeck*, Standard-Bearer of this Army, which is like Paradise, (4) to bring the faid joyful Tidings.

You are not ignorant that it is an antient Custom in all the Cities and Provinces of *Persia*, upon the Reception of any good Piece of Intelligence, to pay the Contribution called the Courier's Fee: But confidering that our faithful Subjects have not been deficient for three Years paff in affifting us with all their Power, and furnifhing the extraordinary Expences which we have been obliged to be at, I remit to them the aforefaid Contribution; and willing that all Persons, of every Degree, be informed of this joyful News, by the public read-

(3) Answering to the 12th of our Month of *March*.

(4) *Mafalis*.

*The HISTORY of*

ing of this our Mandate, we order the City Chamber to pay only 12 Tomans (1) of our own Money to the Bearer of it, and present him with the Habit of Honour, without taxing any private Person a Farthing towards the Expence of all this.

The present Letter shall be immediately sent to *Avisa, Congiloen*, and all the other Cities round about *Isphahan*, that the Inhabitants of the respective Countries may partake early of the agreeable Tidings, and have so much the more Cause to increase their Hopes. This Royal Mandate must be received with Esteem and Veneration. Given in our Camp before *Candahar* the 4th of the Month *Sjehejed Tulharoem*, in the Year 1150. (2) ”

Underneath was the following Order.

“ Whereas Bonfires and Illuminations may run our poor Subjects into burthensome Expences, we order that none be made ; and will only that the Trumpets be sounded, and the Drums beat to the Royal March, and the other customary Flourishes. ”

*Kouli Kan* retolves on a War against the Great Mogul. After that *Kouli Kan* had every where reduced the *Aghwans* to Obedience, and put it out of their Power to do any farther Mischief, he resolved to take revenge on the Great Mogul, who had underhand fed the Flame of Rebellion in *Persia*. It is an ill Sort of Policy, too common among Princes, to excite Insurrections against such of their Neighbours

( 1 ) About One Pound Sixteen Shillings.

( 2 ) March 13th 1738.



as give them any Umbrage, to spare neither Treasures nor Intrigues to foment these Troubles, and at the same time to assure this Neighbour publickly of the most pacific Intentions towards him, of a particular Esteem for his Person, and an eternal Friendship for all his Family. What is the effect of all this? The Prince that is thus marked out for a Dupe, sees at last thro' the thin Disguise, and as soon as he has terminated the Affairs that have been brought on him at home, falls with all his Forces upon the Incendiary, who, not expecting such a Surprise, becomes the Victim of his false Politicks. Effeminaey and a perfidious Temper are the Cause of all this: For a Prince who dreads the Power of his Neighbour, ought at the same time that he raises him up Enemies at home, to declare open War against him, lest the other Expedient should become dangerous. Thus it proved with the *Great Mogul*, who pursuing the Maxim contrary to true Policy, brought on himself the Arms of the Valiant *Kouli Kan*, which proved to him very fatal; as the Reader will see in what follows. But before I enter into a Detail of this War, I must give the Reader some Idea of the Dominions, Power, and Riches of this *Indian Monarch*.

*Mogol*, *Mogul*, or *Mongale*, is the Name of Description a Horde of Tartars in *Great Tartary*, North on of the of Mount *Imaus*. The Country inhabited by *Mogul's* these *Moguls* is called *Mogulistan*, which every Empire. Reader should distinguish from the Empire of the *Great Mogul*. It was in *Mogulistan* that *Timur-Bec*, or *Tamerlane*, first drew breath, and at the Head of the *Tartars* of his own Coun-

Country that he made those famous Conquests in *Afia*. He it was that founded the Empire of the *Moguls* in *India*, which is sufficiently known to us under the Name of *Indostan*.

This vast Country has *China* on the East, *Persia* on the West, that long Chain of Mountains on the North call'd *Imaus*, from which issue the *Ganges* and the *Sinde* or *Indus*, and on the South the Gulph of *Ganges*, and the Peninsula of *Malabar* and *Coromandel*, where the Emperor possesses the Country of *Decan*, and the Kingdom of *Golconda*. The Province of *Candahar* borders upon the West of the *Mogul's* Dominions: It is no Wonder therefore that the Emperor dreaded a Neighbour so formidable as *Kouli Kan*; but it is surprising that he gave him Cause of Offence, and did not ward off the merited Blow. I have only to add, to what I have said concerning *Tamerlane's* being the Founder of this Empire, that of all the vast Territories conquered by that great Captain, this is the only Sovereignty that remains in his Family, and that his Descendents have kept possession of.

A Chronological  
Abridg-  
ment of  
the Reigns  
of the *Moguls*.

*Miracha*.  
*Abuchaid*.

*Miracha*, third Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded him in *Indostan*, the *Persian Irack*, and *Cabulistan*. He resided in *Herat*, and was kill'd in 1451, after a Reign of 46 Years. His Son *Abuchaid* had the Throne after him, and was driven from it on account of his Indolence, but reascended it afterwards by valiant Actions. Excessive in his Virtues, as well as in his Faults, when he began to rouse from his Lethargy he became so active, that no body near him had any repose. He unadvisedly attacked

*Usum-*

*Ufumcaffan*, and that rash War cost him his Life.

*Scheik-Omar*, *Abuchaid*'s Son, reigned after *Scheik-Omar*, him, but did nothing worthy of being recorded. His Son *Babar*, properly speaking, was the first *Indian* Emperor: For having abandoned his other Dominions, he retired in Disguise into *India*, and established his Residence there entirely. He gave Laws to the People he governed, which acquired him the Reputation of a Wise Prince. He died in the Year 1530. *Babar*.

*Homayum*, the Son of *Babar*, ascended the Throne immediately upon his Father's Death. *Homayum* A Prince of the *Patanians*, or *Patans*, made War upon, and dethroned him: But *Homayum*, succoured by the King of *Persia*, repaired this Misfortune, and recovered his Empire. He died in 1552.

*Ackbar*, a Prince that even in *Europe* would *Ackbar*. have been regarded as a great Genius, succeeded next, and formed many glorious Enterprises. One was, to unite all his Subjects, *Pagans*, *Mahometans*, and *Christians*, in one Belief; for which purpose he drew up a Body of Maxims, containing those Tenets in which all the Religions agreed. It is observed, that tho' he had this Design very much at Heart, he used only Caresses to put it in Execution, and chose rather to give it up, than to enforce it with Menaces and Torments. He was naturally Humane, Gentle, Compassionate; and his Example may make some Sovereigns blush, who call themselves Civilized and Christians. This good Prince poisoned himself by Mistake in 1605.

His Successor was *Selim*, his eldest Son, *Selim* or who

*Gehan-Guire.*

who afterwards took the Name of *Gehan-Guire*. He reigned 23 Years, and during that Time made many Conquests. He died at *Bimber* in 1627.

*Bolaqui.*

*Bolaqui*, the Son of *Bhadurcha*, and Grandson of *Gehan-Guire*, succeeded under the Name of *Cha Gehan*. He had revolted against his Predecessor, and his Reign was agitated with divers Troubles: For as if God had intended to punish his Rebellion, it so fell out that his Third Son *Aureng-Zeb*, or *Orang-Zeb*, rebelled against him, made him Prisoner, and together with his Liberty dispossessed him of his Throne. He died in 1666.

*Aureng-Zeb.*

*Aureng-Zeb*, resolving to have no Competitor for the Empire, put to death *Dara* his Eldest Brother, obliged *Sujah* the Second to seek an Asyle in the Kingdom of *Arracan*, East of *Indostan*, and found means to cut off *Morat* the Third, who had helped to advance him to the Imperial Dignity. *Aureng-Zeb* ascended the Throne in 1660, and died in 1707, aged 91 Years. He had for his Successor *Farogzier*, or *Cha-Alem*, who left his Crown after ten Years to his Son *Jehan-Cha*; and he reigning but a short time, his three elder Sons, *Cha-Alem*, *Jehaan*, and *Reffi-Ulkedder*, had the Sovereignty in their turns and soon died; so that it came at last to *Mahmet-Cha* a Minor, the youngest of the four Brothers. It was this Prince that *Thamas Kouli-Kan* made to feel the Weight of his Resentment.

His Succession to  
*Mahmet-Cha.*

*Mahmet-Cha's* History and Character,

*Mahmet-Cha* was brought up in the Seraglio, under his Mother's Care, who governed in the Name of her Son. This occasioned many

## THAMAS KOULIKAN.

many Rebellions, conducted by the Grandees of the Kingdom, which however were all happily suppressed. When *Mahmet-Cha* was arrived at the Age of Majority, and governed by himself, the *Basirawds* (a hardy and courageous Nation inhabiting to the South of *Indostan*) revolted, and dared to make Incursions to the very Gates of *Deli*, the Place of the Imperial Residence. *Mahmet-Cha* overcame them, and every one expected he would have exterminated their Race: He, on the contrary, not only forgave the Multitude, but would not suffer even the Ring-Leaders of the Rebellion to be put to Death, in hopes by his Clemency to attach them to his Interest. All the Accounts received from *India* do indeed agree in this, that *Mahmet-Cha* is of a very gentle and pacific Nature. But this Inclination to Peace and Repose, proved fatal to him in the War he had with *Schach-Nadir*; for having neglected the Occupation of Arms, his Troops were not able to withstand the Efforts of the Disciplined and Veteran *Persians*.

As to the Territories that compose the Division *Mogul Empire*, Authors enumerate Fifty-and Extent four large Provinces, of which the following of *Indo-Twenty-three* bear the Titles of Kingdoms; *stan*. viz. *Deli, Agra, Labor, Asmit, Guzarat, Mallua, Patana, Batar, Brampour, Boglana, Ragemal, Moultan, Cabul, Tatta, Baccar, Urecha, Cachemire, Decan, Nandé, Bengal, Ugen, Visapour* and *Golconda*. All these Kingdoms and Provinces form a Country of about Fifteen-Hundred Miles long, to reckon on



Soil and  
Inhabi-  
tants.

on from the Kingdom of *Golconda* to *Kasni*, which lies upon the Borders of *Candahar*.

In this vast Extent of Territory, some Parts are extremely fertile, even superior in that respect to *Egypt*. Not only Rice and Wheat, but many Commodities unknown to *Egypt* are found there; as Indigo, Silk, Cotton, and many others which our Books of Voyages mention. Other Provinces are less fruitful, those in particular that are mountainous. In all *Indostan* there is but very little uninhabited Land, the whole Face of the Country abounding with Cities and Villages. The People are naturally slothful; yet do many of them, partly thro' Necessity and partly thro' Avarice, employ themselves in Manufactures of Silk, Brocades, Embroideries, Cloths of Gold and Silver.

Tributary  
Kings.

The *Great Mogul* is not absolute Sovereign of all the Countries I have named. A few particular Districts have their own respective Kings, who pay a Tribute to the Emperor, and are obliged to take the Field with their Troops when ever he pleases to command. These Kings are Idolaters; and tho' the *Mahometans* are sworn Enemies of Gentilism, they tolerate these from a Political View, as they serve to counter-balance the Credit of the *Omrahs*, that is, the Grandees of the Court, who, tho' separately but weak in comparison of the Emperor, become a very formidable Body when united.

These petty Pagan Monarchs are called *Rajas*, and their Soldiers *Ragipouts*, that is, the Sons of *Rajas*. They make a Vow either to conquer or die; then get drunk with  
Opium,

Opium, and will suffer themselves to be cut in pieces by their Enemies before they will turn their Backs. Besides the *Rajas* there are some Kings who only pay a Tribute, and are under no Obligation to serve in the Army: Such are the Kings of *Golconda*, *Visapour*, &c.

It must be imagined, that to guard this immense Tract of Land, there must be a prodigious Number of Troops: Nor indeed is there any Monarch in *Asia* who keeps so many as the *Great Mogul*. The Army, which encamps always at the Palace Gates, whether the Court be at *Agra* or *Deli*, amounts to 50,000 Horse, and 150,000 Foot. When the Emperor goes out, either into the Country or elsewhere, these two Cities resemble only a Camp that a vast Army has just quitted: For excepting the Quarters of the *Banians*, who are great Merchants, the rest is nearly depopulated. Besides this Army, every City of the Empire maintains continually a certain Number of Horse and Foot, who are always ready to march at the first Order. Add to these the *Ragipouts*, who make together no inconsiderable Body.

The Soldiers which the Cities furnish, assemble according to the Provinces or Kingdoms, and form a very large Army. The Kingdom of *Bengal*, for Example, furnishes 40,000 Horse, exclusive of the Infantry; the Kingdom of *Agra* furnishes 15,000 Horse; the Kingdom of *Deli* as many; that of *Cabul* 6000, and so of the rest.

To feed and support such a prodigious Number of Soldiers, there must be immense Revenues; and in these the *Great Mogul* is

no way deficient. He is Master of all the Effects in his Empire, and gives and takes them away, when and to whom he pleases. He raises and abases according to his Pleasure, with this particular Circumstance, that the Son of a General of his Armies, who has been the most rich, and the most loaded with Favours perhaps of any in the Empire, becomes in an Instant a mere Beggar if he has no Merit, and is no more esteemed than if he sprung from the vilest Peasant.

Revenues  
Fixed.

Besides this Prerogative which the King has of giving and taking away, he receives very large fixed Revenues, of which the following List was taken from the Archives of the Empire. But the better to understand it, I must first remark, that all the Kingdoms of *Indostan* are divided into *Sarcars*, that is to say Provinces, and that the *Sarcars* are subdivided into *Parganas*, signifying inferior Governments within the Limits of that Province, somewhat like the Hundreds in our Shires. In the second Place, the Reader ought to know, that according to the *Indian* Manner of accounting, a Carol or Kourour is worth a Hundred Lacks, that a Lack includes a Hundred Thousand Roupees, and that every Roupee is equivalent to about Two Shillings and Sixpence Halfpenny English. \*

\* So that a Lack is about thirteen Thousand one Hundred and thirty Pounds, and a Carol about one Million three Hundred and thirteen Thousand Pounds, English Money. Some value the Roupee at Threepence Halfpenny less, but the Gross Sums here mentioned will not admit of it.

The

The Kingdom of *Deli* has within its Government eight *Sarcars* and two Hundred and twenty *Parganas*, which pay one Carol, twenty-five Lacks, and fifty Thousand Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Agra* reckons within its Limits fourteen *Sarcars*, and two Hundred and Sixty eight *Parganas*, which pay to the Emperor, two Carols, twenty-two Lacks, and three Thousand five Hundred and Fifty Roupees.

In the Kingdom of *Labor* are computed Five *Sarcars*, and three Hundred and fourteen *Parganas*, the Revenue of which is two Carols, thirty-three Lacks, and five Thousand Roupees.

The *Sarcars* and *Parganas* in the Kingdom of *Asmir* pay two Carols, nineteen Lacks, and two Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Guzarate*, including nine *Sarcars* and nineteen *Parganas*, pays two Carols, thirty-three Lacks, and ninety-five Thousand Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Malua*, divided into eleven *Sarcars*, and two Hundred and fifty small *Parganas*, pays but ninety-nine Thousand Lacks, and six Thousand two Hundred and fifty Roupees.

In the Kingdom of *Bear* are numbered eight *Sarcars*, and two Hundred and Forty-six small *Parganas*, which produce one Carol, twenty-one Lacks, and twenty-five Thousand Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Cabul*, divided into thirty five *Parganas*, affords but Thirty-two Lacks, and Seven Thousand two Hundred and fifty Roupees.

*The HISTORY of*

The Kingdom of *Tatta* pays five Lacks, and two Thousand Roupees.

That of *Bacar* pays only Twenty-four Lacks.

Tho' they reckon Eleven *Sarcars*, and a sufficient Number of *Parganas* in the Kingdom of *Urecha*, it pays no more than Fifty-seven Lacks, and seven Thousand five Hundred Roupees.

The Forty-six *Parganas* of the Kingdom of *Cachemire*, pay only Thirty-five Lacks, and five Thousand Roupees; tho' this Kingdom is called the Terrestrial Paradise of the *Indies*, on Account of its Fertility.

The Kingdom of *Illavas*, with its Dependencies, renders Seventy-seven Lacks, and Thirty-eight Thousand Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Decan*, which is divided into Eight *Sarcars*, and Seventy-nine *Parganas*, pays one Carol, Sixty-two Lacks, and Four Thousand seven Hundred and Fifty Roupees.

In the Kingdom of *Barar* they count Ten *Sarcars*, and a Hundred Ninety-one small *Parganas*, from which the Emperor receives One Carol, Fifty-eight Lacks, and Seven Thousand five Hundred Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Baglana* contains Forty three *Parganas*, and renders Sixty eight Lacks, and Eighty five Thousand Roupees.

The Province of *Candis*, which may also be called a Kingdom, produces One Carol, Eleven Lacks, and Five Thousand Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Nandé* pays only Seventy-two Lacks.

That



That of *Bengal* pays Four Carols.

That of *Ugen* pays Two Carols.

That of *Ragemahal*, One Carol and Fifty Thousand Roupees.

The Kingdom of *Visapour*, and a Part of *Carnatte*, produce 5 Carols.

Finally, the Kingdom of *Golconda*, and another Part of *Carnatte*, send up also Five Carols.

All these Sums, added together, amount to Three Hundred Eighty seven Millions, One Hundred Ninety four Thousand Roupees: And to take the *Indian* Roupees, as above, for about Two Shillings and sixpence each, *English* Money, the stated Annual Revenue of the *Mogul* Emperor amounts to about Forty three Millions, Five Hundred Fifty-nine Thousand Three Hundred Pounds *Sterling*.

Besides these fixed Revenues, there are *Casual*. some *Casual* Taxes, that bring him in great Riches. 1. He exacts a Tribute of so much *per Head* of all the Pagan *Indians*. 2. All Commodities, exported by Heathen Merchants, pay Five *per Cent* of their Value by way of Custom: The *Mahometans* are exempt from these Imposts. 3. There is a Sort of Tribute upon the Whitening of Linens or Cottons, of which there are vast Quantities in the *Indies*. 4. The Diamond Mines bring the Emperor in prodigious Sums; besides that he demands the Finest, Largest, and most Perfect for himself. 5. The Sea-Ports, and in particular those of *Sindi*, *Barocha*, *Surat* and *Cambaya*, are subject to great Taxes. 6. But what most of all augments the Emperor's Revenues, is, that he is

sole Heir at Law to all the Moveables, Money, Effects, in a Word, to all the Wealth of those *Mahometan* Subjects who die in his Pay. By this Means the Widows of Governors of Provinces, and Generals of the Army, are often reduced to a very moderate Pension, and their Sons, as I before observed, (without Merit of their own) plunged into the meanest Beggary.

Arsenals,  
 &c.

As to other Particulars ; Except the Emperor's own, there are no Arsenals in the *Mogul's* Territories, every Commander of Troops being obliged to furnish Arms for his Men. For this Reason a *Mogul* Army appears with a Mixture of Muskets, Scymetars, Bows, Swords, and Lances. But as to the *Imperial Arsenal*, we are assured that there is nothing in the World of that Kind more magnificent ; all the Arms glitter with Precious Stones. His Artillery is numerous, and the Pieces of Cannon that he uses in War, for the most Part, are more ancient than ours. It is not without Reason therefore, that some imagine the Use of Cannon and Powder was known in the *Indies* before the Time of *Tamerlane*, and that they attribute the Invention of them to the *Chinese* : For the *Moguls* have a Tradition, that the *Chinese* cast Artillery in *Deli*, at the Time that they were Masters of it.

Elephants. The Emperor's Elephants make another Part of the Strength of his Armies, and are an Ornament of his Palace. He keeps to the Number of 500 of them, under large porticos built on purpose. They have all pompous Names, like those which the *Europeans* give their

Men of War, Fire-Ships, and Bomb-Ketches. One of them is called *Memum-Baharek*, that is to say, *The Majestic Mover*: Another is named *Dut-Hingar*, the *Terror of Armies*. The Furniture of these Creatures is of a surprising Magnificence. That, in particular, which the Emperor rides, has on his Back a Throne shining with Gold and Precious Stones. The rest are covered with Plates of Gold and Silver, Housings of Gold Embroidery, Bells and Fringes of Gold. It looks as if the *Mogul* Emperor took delight to exhaust Magnificence itself, in adorning these Animals, which are indeed the only Carriage he makes use of. The Elephant of the Throne, whose Name is *Orang-Gas*, that is, the *Captain of the Elephants*, is always followed by a long Retinue, and has a great Number of Officers in his Service. He never walks without Drums beating, Trumpets sounding, and Banners waving before him. The Maintenance of every Elephant is rated at 25 Roupees every Day, about Three Pounds, Three Shillings and Sixpence Half Penny English; but the Elephant of the Throne has three Times as much for his Allowance. Ten Servants are appointed to every Elephant, to take care of and wait upon him. They are equally disciplined for Hunting or War; and by teaching them to attack Lions and Tigers, they are familiarised to Carnage in the Field of Battle.

The Emperor's Throne is valued at Four The Em-  
Carols or Kourours. Now Four Carols, at peror's  
the Rate of One Hundred Lacks to the Ca- Throne.  
rol, and One Hundred Thousand Roupees  
to

to the Lack, amount to Forty Millions of Roupees; and allowing Two Shillings Sixpence only for every Roupee, this Throne comes to about Five Millions English Money. Nor ought this Price to be thought extraordinary, if we reflect that it \* stands upon Six large Pedestals of solid Gold, and is adorned with a Profusion of Rubies, Emeralds and Diamonds.

In a Word, it is very certain that the *Great Mogul* is the Richest and most Magnificent Sovereign in all *Asia*, and perhaps in the whole Universe: For those who have resided Ten whole Years in his Court, and been inquisitive about every Thing, affirm that he is, in this Respect, far superior to the *Grand Signior* and the *Schah of Persia* put together.

This is all that I thought it necessary to say of the *Great Mogul*, and his Dominions in general: But what follows I think may be properly added with regard to the Kingdom of *Cabul* or *Cabulistan* in particular, as that was the chief Theater of the War between *Kouli Kan* and *Mahmet-Cha*.

A particular Description of *Cabulistan* *Cabul*, or *Cabulistan*, as the *Mogulians* call it, is situated in one of the Extremities of the *Mogul Empire*. It has *Tartary* on the North, from which it is separated by Mount *Imaus*, formerly *Caucasus*, and by the *Indians* called *Caf Dagni*. On the East it has the Kingdom of *Cachemire*; on the West *Zabistan*, and a Part of *Candahar*; and on the South, the Country of *Moultan*. The *Persians*

\* See *Bernier's Travels in the East-Indies*, Vol. II.

*sians* have sometimes been in Possession of it, as the *Moguls* at other Times have been possessed of the Kingdom of *Candahar*.

The Rivers *Behat* and *Nilab* have their Sources in *Cabulistan*, and cross it to fall into the *Sinde*, which is the *Indus* of the Antients. But tho' thus watered, it is not a very plentiful Country: For the Climate being extreme cold, in Comparison with the other Countries that compose the *Mogul* Empire, there is little Fertility but in such Places as are shadowed by Mountains. It is notwithstanding very rich, because a great Trade is carried on thro' it to *Tartary*, the Country of the *Usbecks*, and *Persia*. The *Usbecks* alone sell there above 60,000 Horses annually, and the Country is so commodiously situated for Commerce, that Supplies are brought to it from all Parts, of what it wants, and all Necessaries are to be had there at reasonable Prices.

The Capital of the Province is called *Ca- Cabul* City. It is a very large City, and has twenty good Castles. As two Kings have kept their Court here, and several Princes have since had it for their Appointment, it abounds with Palaces. It stands in 33 Degrees and a half North Latitude.

In the neighbouring Mountains grow Mirabolans, \* which therefore the *Oriental*s call *Cabuly*. The same Mountains afford many Sorts of Drugs, and abound with Aromatic Woods. There are also Mines of Iron, that is fit for every Use. It is particu-

\* An Excellent Sort of Plums.



larly in this Province that they get those Canes, with which the *Indians* make Lances and Halberds. They are even planted in many Spots of Ground.

Religion of the *Cabulists*. *Cabulistan* is full of small Cities, Towns, and Villages, most of the Inhabitants of which are Heathens, and therefore the *Pagods* are numerous. They reckon their Months by Moons, and with much Veneration celebrate the Feast they call *Houby*, which lasts two Days. Their Temples are then full of People, who come to pray and make their Offerings. The rest of the Celebration consists in Dancing along the Streets in Troops, to the Sound of Trumpets. At this Time they all dress in deep Red, and many go masked to visit their Friends. Those who are of the same Family eat together, and in the Evening they make Bonfires in the Streets. This Feast is celebrated every Year in the *February* Full-Moon, and it ends with destroying the Figure of a Giant, against whom a little Child draws Arrows, in Representation of what their Priests tell the People. "God, say they, came down to the World in the Form of a little Child, and under the Name of *Cruchman*. A great Giant, fearing to be destroyed by him, endeavoured his Destruction. But this Infant took aim at him so dextrously with an Arrow, that he fell'd him down, and slew him." Some will have this to be an Emblem of Christianity, and pretend that the *Cabulists* formerly professed that Religion. If so, they have terribly disfigured, by Superstition and Fable, what in itself is very simple. Their most considerable

ble Charity consists in digging a great Number of Wells, and raising of Buildings from Space to Space in the Highways, for the Convenience of Travellers. In these Buildings there is always a Place proper for those to reside in who are weary, and who carry Burthens; so that they may set their Packs down without Assistance. Such is the Kingdom of *Cabul*, and such are its Inhabitants. Let us now proceed to *Kouli Kan*.

We have in some Measure seen the Reasons which induced this *Schah* to make War upon the *Great Mogul*, *Mahmet-Cha*: The Progress and Success of that War is what we are next to relate.

Upon the Motions made by the *Persian* The Governor of *Candabar*, and the Extirpation of the Rebels, the *Souba*, or *Go-Cabul* *avernor*, of the Province of *Cabul*, whose Name was *Nafir-Kan*, apprehended plainly that he was going to be attacked. He sent early Advice of it to the Court, which was then at *Deli*, and gave the *Mogolian* Monarch to understand, that he had not Troops sufficient to defend the Province committed to his Charge against the *Persians*. *Mahmet-Cha*, upon this, ordered considerable Remittances to be made him, by means of which the Governor levied Troops, and fortified himself the best he was able. His Army, in a short Time, amounted to 50,000 Men. He took Possession of the Defiles between the Kingdoms of *Candabar* and *Cabul*, posted in them large Bodies of Troops, behind Entrenchments defended with deep Ditches, covered with a great number of Trees that he caused

His Dispositions for a Defence.

to

to be felled, and supported with the necessary Artillery.

*Kouli Kan* was not ignorant of these Preparations ; but as he had still some Affairs to settle in *Persia*, he did not offer to interrupt them. At last he took the Field with an Army of 90,000 Men, and directed his March towards the Kingdom of *Cabul*. He attempted at first to pass the Defiles ; but at first re- found them so well guarded, that his Troops, pulsed. brave as they were, were repulsed wherever they strove to penetrate. Any other than *Kouli-Kan* would have abandoned the Enterprize : He, on the contrary, found his Resolution and Courage encrease, in Proportion to the Difficulties he had to encounter ; and seeing that his Army, in Consequence of the good Orders he had given, abounded in Provisions and Ammunitions of War, he determined to wait patiently for some favourable Moment, wherein to surprise the *Mogulians*. It was not long before Fortune presented him with what he desired, the Means and Opportunity of penetrating into the Kingdom of *Cabul*.

Account  
of the *Pa-*  
*tans*.

There is a Nation in the Dominions of the *Great Mogul*, who came originally from the Banks of the *Ganges*, and had formerly expelled the Descendents of *Timur-Bec*, and got Possession of the Government of *Indostan*. This People, called the *Patans*, of whom I took notice in speaking of *Homayum*, the Prince they dethroned, and who was restored to the Throne by the Assistance of the *Persians* ; the *Patans*, I say, ever since that Time, have inherited an implacable Hatred against the

the *Moguls*, which they have never failed to give Proof of, when they had an Opportunity of doing them a Mischief. Of this there was now a remarkable Instance. A Soldier of that Nation, in the Army of *Nasir-Kan*, deserted and made his Escape to *Schah Nadir's* Camp.

As he demanded to speak with this Monarch, One of them conducted him, and he was immediately conducted to him, and had a Private Audience that Instant. The *Patan* told *Kouli Kan*, that he knew a certain Way to bring him directly to *Cabul*, without the Governor's having the least Suspicion, who he was sure knew nothing of the Way he meant. Our *Persian* gave him Assurance of an abundant Recompence, in case the Scheme he proposed could be put in Execution. The *Patan* knew the Country perfectly well, and the Feasability of his Project: For the Seat of his Nation, under the Dominion of their *Rajas*, is between the Kingdoms of *Cabul* and *Candahar*. He conducted the Army from the side of *Carabat* towards the West of *Candahar*, across many barren and desert Tracts of Land, where the Heats were excessive, and scarce a Drop of Water could be found: But the Example of their Leader restrained the *Persian* Soldiers from murmuring, and every one bore his own Hardship with Patience. At last they arrived at *Gasnin*, or *Gafna*, and from thence, after many Fatigues, at the Foot of the *Soliman* Mountains, which the Army traversed by a Way unknown, and impassable to any but the Soldiers of *Kouli Kan*. This Hero no sooner saw himself in the Territory of *Cabul*,  
D

*bul*, but he rewarded his Faithful Guide, and marched towards the Capital, turning a little upon the Right, and passing by *Allipafcha*, or *Alleboga*.

While he was upon the March, News was brought him that *Nafir-Kan*, trusting to the Guards he had posted in the Defiles, and the Difficulties his *Persian* Majesty would have to surmount, neglected most of the Precautions usual in Armies, and spent whole Nights in feasting and excessive Pleasures. One may imagine that the *Schah* did not neglect to improve this Information; he paid richly the Man who brought it, and hastened his March in order to surprise the *Mogul* General. He found Him and his Troops in the utmost Where he Security, and immediately drew up his Army defeats the to attack them. It is easy to conceive that in *Mogul* Go-vernor. such a Situation, they made no long Resistance. In a Word, their Camp was almost surrounded, and forced the Moment it was stormed. Most of the Men were killed on the Spot, and the rest (except 3 or 400 who escaped by Flight) were taken Prisoners, to the Number of about 9000. *Nafir-Kan*, the Governor of *Cabul*, was among the latter. This Action happened a few Leagues below *Cabul*, in a small Plain surrounded with the Mountains of *Soliman*.

After the Defeat of *Nafir-Kan*'s Army, all the other Posts in the Mountains were soon abandoned, none of the *Indians* attempting to make Head before the Conqueror. Perhaps the Reader will not be displeased to see here the Translation of a Letter, which that Monarch wrote to his Second Son upon this Event.



*A Letter and Edict of Schah Nadir to his Second Son Nassun Ulla Mirza, written from Biesjapour in Indostan, and sent by a Courier.*

“ In the Name of the Almighty and All-merciful God.

WE will that every one yield Obedience to our most dear and well-beloved Son *Nassun Ulla Mirza*, whom we assure of our Royal Favour. Be it known, that trusting entirely in God, who is our Strength and our Support, we set out on *Tuesday* the 12th in the Morning from *Allipascha*, where we had rested our Army, and which is two Leagues distant from *Fillaal-abat*, and arrived the Evening of the same Day at *Bariel-alb*. From thence, having put ourself at the Head of some Thousands of the most Alert of our Troops, we advanced by long Marches to *Himrod*, within three Leagues of *Biesjapour*, near which Place we are at this present. We learned at *Himrod*, that the Governour *Nasir-Kan* spent his Time in Diversions and Debaucheries, with the other Generals and chief Officers of his Army. Upon this Advice I advanced to his Camp, which I attacked at unawares, and immediately forced it. But a very few Soldiers escaped, the rest having been either killed or taken. Many Officers underwent the same Fate, and we reckon among our Prisoners the Governor *Nasir-Kan* himself. We have also taken all their Artillery, and all their Baggage. You will be informed of other Circumstances of this Battle by

His Letter  
thereupon  
to his Son.

The HISTORY of

the \* Colonels *Mahmet Ibrahim-Beck*, and *Yeffu Chan-Beck*, whom I have dispatched to you, and who will give you a particular Detail by Word of Mouth.

Your Excellence, upon the Receipt of These, will order the Cannon to be discharged, the Drums to be beat, the Trumpets to be sounded, and all other Demonstrations of Publick Joy to be given. You will also send Advice of this Event to all our Superior Officers, that they with us may praise the Eternal, and render him Thanks for this Happy and Signal Victory.

After this Letter has been read, it shall be sent to *Jillal-abat*, to his Highness *Dioen Kuli-Beck*, chief Standard-Bearer of our Camp, who shall take Care to send it to *Cabul*, to his Highness *Jamoem Verdi-Kan*, and he shall transmit it to *Affir of Zulthoen* Governor of *Casmin*, and he to our most dear and well beloved Sun *Nassun-Ulla Mirza*, Vice-Roy of *Persia*, that he also may be informed of the Great Victory we have obtained. The whole shall be exactly followed and executed, according to the Tenor of our present Decree.

Given the 14th of the Month *Sjaboen Ulmbasam*, in the Year 1151." (According to the *English* Old Stile, November 28, 1738.)

At the Bottom of the Copy of this Letter that was sent into *Europe*, were these Words.

\* So I translate the *Persian* Word *Miembas-jer* which signifies properly, Chief of a Thousand Men,

“ Thus

“ Thus wrote the Secretary *Camber-Ali*, and his Words have been translated from *Persian* into *Dutch* as faithfully as possible. ”

It is proper to remark, before we proceed, that *Kouli Kan* had surpris'd *Cabul*, the Capital of the Country, a few Days before the Battle. The Inhabitants, tho' they did not expect him, no Man imagining he could pass the Defiles that were so well guarded, did not however think it safe to irritate him, and surrendered as soon as he appeared. The *Schah* put a Garrison into the Town, with a *Persian* Governor.

*Cabul*  
taken.

After this Conquest, he wrote to the *Great Kouli-Kan Mogul*, making him Propositions for a Peace, sends to  
It is not the Custom of these Princes to have the *Great*  
Embassadors resident at each other's Courts, *Mogul*.  
much less to make formal Declarations of War, according to the Custom of the Christians. When they send an Embassy, it is only by way of Felicitation on some prosperous Event, or to give notice of some extraordinary Occurrence. These are mere Casualties; and even on such Occasions, the Embassadors make but a short Stay, except at the Court of the *Great Mogul*, who sometimes detains them out of Pride, and refuses to give them an Audience of Leave, till they have been Witnesses of all the Pomp and Pageantry of his Court. As to War, they make no other Declaration of it, nor use any other Formality, than that of falling suddenly upon the Country they design to attack. For this Reason the Sovereigns always keep up a numerous Body of Troops, even in Time of Peace, and when they have most Reason to

be secure of their Neighbour's Friendship. After they have begun a War, they usually continue it a long Time, because neither Party will ask for a Peace, which they look upon as an infamous Mark of their own Submission. If they are obliged however to stoop to it, they commonly make the first Proposals themselves, and leave the Treaty to be concluded by their respective Ministers.

Substance  
of his  
Letter.

As *Kouli Kan* had taken Arms only for the Security of his Kingdom, he thought proper to prevent the Shame of his Enemy, and generously offered him to accommodate Matters. The Substance of his Letter, an exact Copy of which is wanting, runs thus. " That he was come at the Head of a powerful Army, to conquer a Country which had formerly belonged to *Persia* : That for his Part, he had always observed the Treaties that had been concluded between his Predecessors and the *Mogul* Emperors, by which this Kingdom of *Cabul* had been ceded to the latter ; but that *Mahmet-Cha* having violated them, by fomenting under-hand the Rebellion of the *Aghwans*, he thought himself absolved from any farther Obligation by those Treaties ; for which Reason he had entered the Kingdom of *Cabul* with an armed Force, and made a Conquest of it : That from the good Fortune which had always hitherto attended his Arms, he might flatter himself with Hopes of yet greater Success, in case he pursued his Point ; but that notwithstanding, he offered him Peace, on Condition that the Kingdom of *Cabul* should be ceded to him in Perpetuity, to cover that of *Candahar*, and serve for a  
Barrier

Barrier to *Persia*: That he demanded moreover all the Lands on the *Persian* Side of the *Indus*, from North to South, reckoning from the Source to the Mouth of that River; and this by way of Indemnification for the Expences of the War: Threatning, in case he did not accept of these Conditions, to carry the Arms of *Persia* into the Heart of *Indostan*, and attack him in the Capital of his Empire."

Pretty much like these were the Terms of Reflection. *Kouli Kan's* Letter to *Mahmet-Cha*. They ons on it in favour of that Spirit of Pride and Fierceness which Victory usually inspires; but did not in the least move the *Mogul*, nor abate any thing of the Haughtiness which the Monarchs of *Indostan* have always affected, and which is indeed common to all the Oriental Princes. It appears however, that *Mahmet-Cha*, in this, committed a great Fault: For if on one hand we consider the Valour and good Fortune of *Kouli Kan*, the Discipline and excellent Order of his Troops; and on the other cast our Eyes on the Inexperience and Disorder that reigned in the Army of *Mahmet-Cha*; we cannot help concluding that his Pride and Contempt of the King of *Persia* were then out of Season; that it had been his Interest, and was in true Policy his Business, to temporise, dissemble, and not expose himself lightly to a War, the Success of which, even then, had no advantageous Aspect on his side. I own that *Kouli Kan* demanded a great deal. But then, tho' in fact, not content with the Kingdom of *Cabul*, which he had already conquered, he wanted farther all the Countries on this side the *Indus*  
and



and that this Tract included Part of the Kingdoms of *Moultan* and *Buckor*, quite down to *Tatta*, on the South; and to the Northward the whole Kingdom of *Cachemire*, or *Cassimere*, which makes a prodigious Extent of Country; not to mention that the Kingdom of *Cachemire* has been so valued by the *Mogul* Emperors, that one of them used to say, he had rather lose all *Indostan* than this petty Royalty, which is in reality looked upon as the terrestrial Paradise of the *Indies*, on account of the Temperature of its Air, the Fertility of its Soil, and the Politeness of its Inhabitants: Notwithstanding all this, I say, the best thing *Mahmet-Cha* could have done, would have been to have made at once the Cession demanded by the Conqueror, for whom Fortune so visibly declared. This *Indian* Monarch however took another Method, and published a kind of *Manifesto*, full of abusive Language against *Kouli Kan*, who received and read it in cool Blood, resolving immediately to answer it in another way than by the Pen of his Secretaries. This *Manifesto* is too singular to be intirely omitted here: I will attempt a faithful Translation of it, forewarning the Reader that he must not ascribe to me certain extraordinary Expressions, and even Ideas, which, odd as they may seem to us, are yet familiar enough to the Orientals.

*Translation of the Letter or Manifesto which the Emperor Mahmet-Cha published against Schah Nadir.*

The Superscription ran thus :

“ To *Thamas Kouli Kan*, Usurper of the The great Mogul's  
“ *Persian Throne*. Manifesto.

WE have a long while deliberated, whether we should write to a Man of such base and obscure Birth as thou art; and we reflected that it would be shameful for us, who are so much above all the Princes of the World, to enter into any Explanation with thee, who art nothing but an Usurper, an ungrateful perfidious Fellow, a Traitor, who hast never ceased to persecute thy temporal Lord and lawful Master; who had loaded thee with Benefits. But at last, we have resolved to demean ourself so far as to write to thee, to reproach thee with thy Crimes, to exhort thee to Repentance; that thou mayest prevent the Indignation of God, and the Vengeance which our Royal Hand is preparing for thee.

We have already given Orders to the Generals of our Army to re-take the Country which thou hast unjustly seized, to besiege *Candahar*, to drive from thence the Governor which thou hast appointed, and finally to take thy Person, that I may cause that Punishment to be inflicted on thee which thy Crimes have deserved.

Learn,

The HISTORY of

Learn, Wretch as thou art, what it is to trifle with the Successor of *Tamerlane*, who shines among other Sovereigns as the Sun amid the Stars"——

I was going to translate on, when I saw so many figurative Expressions, so many abstracted and extravagant Thoughts, joined to such a Number of barbarous Names, that I was deterred from the Task, and thought it my Duty to spare the Reader such a disagreeable Reading; imagining it would be sufficient to inform him, that in general this Letter is full of the most gross Scurrilities, Rodomontades, and vain Menaces. Add to all this the Quotations of the *Alcoran*, the rough barbarous Names of many Grandees of the *Mogul's* Court, who are spoken of in this Manifesto, and you must own that I have done the most prudently to suppress the rest. The *Indian* Monarch finishes with saying, that he would send and release *Schah Thamas* out of Prison, and re-place him upon the Throne, and that *Kouli Kan* should then have some Reason to repent of his outrageous Attempts; that he might however avoid the Sufferings which awaited him; that the Pen of Mercy and Grace was yet suspended over the Leaf of his Crimes, and would efface them all upon the least Tokens of Repentance. Where hast thou, says the *Mogul*, seen daring Heroes? Thou hast fought against Turks and Georgians. I shall send Armies like unto Seas: Thou and thy Hosts shall not be able to withstand them.

Our Hero, as I observed before, did not put himself in much Pain about this Piece, and be-

believing that the best Refutation of it would be to push on the War with Vigour, he resolved to pass the *Indus*, and go in quest of the vain-glorious Monarch of *Indostan*, to put an end to the War by a decisive Battle.

*Kouli Kan* was still encamped near *Biesjab*. The *Tak-poer*, or *Pishore*, when he received the *Mouing* of *Pigul's* Letter. This City is of no great Con-*shore*.

sequence, nor has it any good Fortification; yet was there in it a Garrison of 1000 *Indian* Horse, and some Hundreds of Infantry. The *Schah* sent a Summons to the Commander, requiring him to open his Gates; assuring him, that in case of Compliance neither he nor his Garrison should receive the least Injury. The Governor having refused to surrender, *Kouli Kan* ordered the Place to be stormed, and it was immediately carried. Some of the Garrison, as is customary on such Occasions, were put to the Sword. But *Kouli Kan* saved the greatest Part of them, who immediately took on in his Army. The Town was abandoned to pillage, and afforded the Soldiers a fine Booty.

The *Persian Schah* did not stop here. Some *Kouli Kan* Leagues distant from *Pishore* is a considerable *passes the* City called *Attock*, situated upon the Conflu-*Rivers, and* ence of the *Nilab* and that Part of the *Indus* takes *At-* to which it communicates its Name. *Kouli tock.*

*Kan* resolved to pass the *Nilab*, and make himself Master of this Place. There was no such thing as a Bridge in this Country: But the *Schah* knew so well how to remedy that Inconvenience, by the Pontoons which his *European* Engineers had built for him, that his Army very soon appeared on the other Side  
of

of the River. The Governor of *Attock*, surprized at this Expedition, and terrified by the Example of the Commander of *Pishore*, who was killed in the Carnage of that City, sent Deputies to the *Persian* Hero, and offered him the Keys of the Place. *Kouli Kan* put a Garrison in it, and made Dispositions for passing the River *Attock*, which is that Branch of the *Indus* already mentioned. Not a Creature opposed his Passage, which he performed without any other Loss than that of a few Camels loaded with Baggage, who fell down in the Water, and perished there with their Burthens.

The two  
Armies  
approach  
each other.

Mean time *Mahmet-Cha* was arrived upon the Eastern Banks of the *Indus*, at the Head of 400,000 Men. The *Persian* Army was very much diminished; the excessive Heat, and the Fatigue of bad Ways, had caused divers Maladies among them, which carried off abundance of Soldiers. They were not now, at the most, above 60,000 strong. Yet were they not in the least terrified at that vast Multitude of *Indians*, who came to dispute with them the Passage of the *Indus*. Every Thing seemed not only possible to them, but under the Conduct of *Kouli Kan* even easy. This Monarch detached one of his Brethren, he whom we spoke of in the first Part of this History as Governor of *Kerman*, with 6000 Men, and Orders to advance to the *Indus*, and chuse out a proper Place for passing over his Army. For this Purpose he had prepared a Number of Boats, the River being too large to have a Bridge laid over it.

The



The *Inde*, or *Indus*, by modern Geogra- Descr-  
 phers called the *Sinde*, takes its Rise in the tion of the  
 Confines of *Little Thibet*, in the Mountains *Indus*.  
 which separate that Kingdom from the Pro-  
 vince of *Nagracut*. It runs along meandering  
 from N. E. to S. W. separating first the King-  
 dom of *Cachemire* from the Country of *Ban-*  
*kich*; next it traverses the Countries of *Attock*,  
*Moultan*, *Buckor*, and *Tatta*; then falls down  
 into the *Indian Ocean*, after dividing itself  
 into two principal Branches, which are its two  
 Mouths; and form an Isle not much unlike  
 the *Delta* of the *Nilus*. It receives in its  
 Course the Waters of divers other less con-  
 siderable Rivers; among which are those of  
*Nilab*, *Cow* or *Behat*, *Lacca*, *Rawi*, and  
*Van* or *Via*. Every one knows that *Alexan-*  
*der the Great* passed the *Indus* with his Army,  
 and made a Conquest of the Country which  
 is at present called *Indostan*. His Name is  
 still known in those Parts, and the modern  
*Indians* call him *Secander Filifons*, that is to  
 say, *Alexander* the Son of *Philip*. The *In-*  
*dians* of that Monarch's Time were, as they  
 are at present, brave and courageous, witness  
*Porus* and his Army: But their Kings in that  
 Age carried Luxury to an Excess beyond  
 Expression, and perhaps surpassed even the  
*Mogul* Emperors.

(a) "When the King suffers himself to be A Passage  
 "seen in publick, says *Quintus Curtius*, his from *Quin-*  
 "Officers *tius Curti-*  
*us*, con.

(a) *Quum rex se in publico conspici patitur, cerning*  
*thuribula argentea ministri ferunt, totumque iter, King Po-*  
*per quod ferri destinavit, odoribus complent. Au- rus.*

“ Officers carry Silver Censers before him,  
 “ and perfume all the Ways by which he  
 “ passes. He lies upon a Golden Litter, a-  
 “ dorned with Pearls that hang all around it.  
 “ He is clothed in a Linen Robe, embroidered  
 “ ed with Gold and Purple. Behind the  
 “ Litter come his Gendarms and Body-  
 “ guards, many of whom carry Branches of  
 “ Trees, full of singing Birds, whom they  
 “ have taught to warble Variety of Tunes, in  
 “ order to divert him amidst his serious Affairs.  
 “ His Palace is enriched with gilded Columns,  
 “ entwined all along with Golden Vines, in-  
 “ termixed with Figures of Birds made in Sil-  
 “ ver; there being nothing in which they

rea lætica margaritis circumpendentibus recubat.  
 Distincta sunt auro & purpura carbasa, quæ indu-  
 tus est. Læticam sequuntur armati corporisque  
 custodes; inter quos ramis aves pendent, quas  
 cantu seriis rebus obstrepere docuerunt. Regia  
 auratas columnas habet; totas eas vitis auro cæ-  
 lato percurrit, aviumque, quarum visu maxime  
 gaudent, argenteæ effigies opera distinguunt. Re-  
 gia adeuntibus patet, cum capillum pectit atque  
 ornat: tunc responsa legationibus, tunc jura popu-  
 laribus reddit. Dempitis soleis, odoribus illinun-  
 tur pedes. Venatus maximus labor est, incusa  
 vivario animalia inter vota cantusque pellicum si-  
 gere. Binum cubitorum sagittæ sunt, quas emit-  
 tunt majore nixu quam effectu; quippe telum,  
 cuius in levitate vis omnis est, inhabili pondere  
 oneratur. Breviora itinera equo conficit: lon-  
 gior ubi expeditio est, elephantum vehunt currum;  
 & tantarum belluarum corpora tota contegunt au-  
 ro. Ac, ne quis perditis moribus desit, læticis  
 aureis pellicum longus ordo sequitur.

" more delight than in their variegated Birds  
 " of divers Colours. The King's Palace is  
 " open to all Comers; and while they comb  
 " and adorn his Hair, he gives Audience to  
 " Embassadors, and administers Justice to  
 " his People. His Sandals are taken off, and  
 " his Feet anointed with precious Odours.  
 " The greatest Exercise he takes, is with his  
 " Bow and Arrows to hunt and kill some  
 " Beast enclosed in a Park, while his Con-  
 " cubines surround him with Songs, and  
 " Vows for the good Success of his Sport.  
 " Their Arrows are two Cubits long, which  
 " they let fly with more Effort than Effect,  
 " their unmanageable Weight depriving them  
 " of Force. When he goes not far, he rides  
 " on Horse-back ; but in a long Journey he  
 " is drawn upon a Car by two Elephants,  
 " whose monstrous Bodies are all adorned  
 " and caparisoned with Gold. And that no-  
 " thing might be wanting to this unbounded  
 " Luxury, a long Train of his Concubines,  
 " in Litters of Gold, follow in his Retinue."

Such was the Life that the Kings of *India*  
 led in the Time of *Alexander*, and, with very  
 little Difference, such is the Life led by the  
*Mogul* Emperors at this Day.

*Kouli Kan's* Brother, whom I mentioned to A Place  
 have been detached to survey the Banks of found for  
 the *Indus*, reported, that he had for a long passing the  
 Time sought a commodious Place whereat *Indus*.  
 to pass that River, and that he had at last  
 found one some Leagues above *Hassan Ab-*  
*dal*, where the Channel was not extremely  
 broad, nor the Stream over-rapid ; but that  
 the *Mogul* Cavalry appeared on the other Side,

which would render the Passage difficult, and the Landing yet more so. *Kouli Kan* provided against this Inconvenience, by ordering a Range of long Barks, resembling Half-Gallies, to be built, and furnished with Artillery. This indeed required a considerable Time; but he employed such a Number of Workmen, and by the Help of the *Nilab* procur'd Timber so easily from the Mountains, that in a few Weeks the Work was finished.

Account  
of the Pas-  
sage.

Their Transport Vessels were already prepared, and at the Head of these they put the floating Batteries, which, as they came near the opposite Shore, made a continual Fire upon the Enemy, till the Troops that were in the Boats could also use their small Arms. The *Indians* discharged a prodigious Quantity of Arrows, intermixed with Musket and Cannon Shot, which however did no great Damage: While the gallant *Kouli Kan*, getting into a small light Skiff, with only a few of his select Friends, advanced before all the Fleet, and jumped the first upon Shore. This little Company drove back a large Body of *Indian* Cavalry; but had at last been overpowered, if Succour had not opportunely arrived. Happily for them, the Troops disembarked under the Fire of the Artillery, and several Squadrons having formed themselves in an instant, fell upon the undisciplined disorderly Enemy, and put them to flight.

The Mo-  
gul, dispi-  
rited, flies  
from his  
Army.

Immediately the News was spread in *Moh-gul*, dispirited, flies the *Indus*. The *Mogul* Monarch, who lay with his Army a few Leagues from that River, no sooner heard what was done, but he began

began to perceive the Error he had committed, by putting himself in Competition with the fortunate *Kouli Kan*. His Pride vanished away, his haughty Menaces were changed into very different Dispositions, and he sunk at last into a total Despondency; so that the next Day, accompanied but with a few of the *Rajas* his Tributaries, he privately left the Army, with an Intent to hide himself from Danger in the most remote Part of his Dominions, after having laid waste all the Countries round, to prevent the *Persians* from following him. He was not however so expeditious in the pursuit of this Project, as to put it effectually in execution. The *Mogul* Emperors had rather run the last Risk, than to abandon their *Seraglio*. That Multitude of Women, who follow them almost wherever they go, are a perpetual Clog upon those Princes in their Journeys. Before *Mahmet-Cha* had got ten Leagues, two of his *Omrabs*, or Grandees, who each of them commanded a Body of Troops, overtook him: They had been informed of his dastardly Resolution, and were come to divert him from it, and engage him to return. Their Names were *Nezamelmolk*, who enjoyed the Office of *Afesia*, that is, High-Chancellor, and *Commarudien-Can*. What they represented to him was, that things were not yet in such a desperate Condition; that the *Persian* Army was but a Handful of Men, in comparison of those innumerable Forces who were under the Command of his imperial Majesty; that *Kouli Kan's* Troops were already fatigued with so many Labours and Inconveniences, and above all with what they



had suffered in passing the *Indus*; that their General, far from thinking to undertake any thing, would remain quiet, and esteem himself very happy if they did not attack him, but give him Time to repose his Troops, and re-establish their wasted Vigour; that finally, he ought to look upon the *Persian* Army, and upon *Schah Nadir* himself, as a Parcel of rash Fellows, who had only thrown themselves in the way of Destruction; that they were already half dead with Hunger and Weakness, and that, in order to defeat them, there was nothing more to do but to fall on as soon as possible.

He is persuaded to return.

These Reasons determined the *Mogul* to go back to his Army, but could not prevail on him to attack the *Persians*, who lay very still some Leagues above, only waiting till they were in a Condition to make their Appearance. The gross of the *Persian* Army, which remained under the Orders of one of the most powerful *Rajas*, was now reinforced by that Body of Horse, which always attends the Person of their Emperor. In all probability, if this Multitude of Forces united together had marched directly against the *Persians*, while their Strength and Spirits were yet languid, they might have purchased a cheap Victory: But instead of that, *Mahmet-Cha* took a Resolution to draw together all the Detachments he had sent out, and march towards *Labor*, to support the *Souba*, or Viceroy of that Kingdom, who seemed the most exposed to the Arms of the *Persian* Monarch. This Design was reasonable in itself, and moreover founded upon Advice received from the  
said

said *Souba*, who was a very brave and able Commander. Upon hearing that *Kouli Kan* had passed the *Indus*, that Governor judiciously foresaw that he would endeavour to open himself a Passage through the Kingdom of *Labor* to *Deli*, the Capital of the *Indies*; especially as he had certain Intelligence, that the Victor held a Correspondence with some discontented *Rajas*, over whose Territories he was to pass, and augment his Army with their Troops as he marched along. The Necessity of going to cover the Kingdom of *Labor* seemed therefore indispensable, and the Emperor sent Orders to divers Detachments that he had made along the *Indus*, to rejoin the Army.

While these Orders were executing, *Kouli Kan* *Kouli Kan* seeing his Troops a little recovered, took the Field, and detached *Amier-beck-kan*, one of his Generals, with 6000 Men, to march towards *Emen-abad*, which may not improperly be called the Key of the Kingdom of *Labor*. Besides the Garrison which was in this Town, 10,000 Men defended the Avenues towards it, under the Command of *Fansdaar-Callinder-Can*. They were advantageously posted; but this did not hinder the *Persians* from defeating them, and carrying the City Sword in Hand. At the News of this Disaster, *Sikkeria-kan* (that was the Vice-roy of *Labor's* Name) advanced with 20,000 Men, fully resolved to make head against the *Persians* till *Mahmet-Cha* should come up with all his Forces, and so take the Enemy in Front and Rear. But *Kouli Kan* foresaw all this; and, favoured by the discontented *Rajas*, with

defeats a  
Party, and  
takes E-  
men-abad.

Defeats  
the Vice-  
roy of  
*Labor*.

with all Expedition marched up to the Vice-roy, before he had Time to retire, and gave him a total Defeat. *Sikkeria-kan* fought on this Occasion with abundance of Valour; but having too few Troops, and seeing that the Fortune of *Kouli Kan* carried every thing before it, he quitted the Field of Battle, and, accompanied with several of his Officers, threw himself into the City of *Labor*, resolved to defend himself there till the imperial Army came to his Relief.

*Labor* de-  
scribed.

*Labor*, or, as Mr. *Thevenot* \* writes it, *Lahors*, is distant from *Cachemire*, which lies to the North of it, 48 or 50 Leagues. From *Deli*, which lies to its South, it is remote at least an Hundred Leagues; for they reckon 200 Cosses from one City to the other, and the Cosses, or Half Leagues, are very long in this Country. *Moultan* is to the West of *Labor* Sixty and some odd Leagues. To the East of it are high Mountains, inhabited in many Places by *Rajas*, some of whom are tributary to the great *Mogul*, and others not. These latter have strong Holds, to which they retire, and cannot be driven from them, whatever Robberies they commit upon the Merchants: So that those who travel this Country, are obliged to have Soldiers for their Guard, to defend the *Caravanferas* from these Thieves.

Its Situa-  
tion.

*Labor* is situated in 31 Degrees 50 Minutes North Latitude, near the River *Rawi*, which runs into the *Indus*. The River formerly ran close to the Town; but, having its Course

\* Voyage des Indes, Chap. xxxvii. p. 175.

on a level Ground, it altered its Channèl above a quarter of a League. It was a very fine Place when the *Mogul* Emperors kept their Court there, and before they had preferred to it either *Deli* or *Agra*. It is large, and has been, like the other imperial Residences, adorned with Mosques, public Baths, Squares, Quays, Palaces, and Gardens. The Castle still remains, it being a good Building. Formerly it had three Gates towards the City, and nine towards the Country. Within-side of it is the King's Palace, which has not yet lost all its Ornaments. There are many Paintings upon the Walls, representing the Actions of the Great *Moguls*, whose Ancestors are depicted with great Magnificence. Upon one Gate there is a Crucifix, and upon another the Picture of the Virgin *Mary*; which Mr. *Thevenot* takes for an Evidence of *Geban-guir's* Hypocrisy, who pretended to have a high Regard for the Christian Religion, in order to flatter the *Portuguese*, of whom he had occasion. However that be, this City gives Name to a Province of *Indostan*, which was anciently a Kingdom. The *Moguls* call it *Pan-geab*, which signifies the five Rivers, because there are five which have their Sources in this Territory. In the *Grecian* Times they were called *Acesines*, *Cophes*, *Zaiadras*, *Hypasis*, and *Hydaspes*; which last is particularly famous for the Victory which *Alexander the Great* won at the Passage of it over *Porus*, who perhaps was King of that Province which we now call *Labor*. The Names of these Rivers, at this Day, are *Behat*, *Canab*, *Find*,  
*Rawy*,

*Rawy*, and *Van*: They all fall into the *Indus*.

Produce  
and Ma-  
ufactures.

As to the rest; this Province is one of the largest and most plentiful in all *Indostan*. Its Fertility is in a great Measure owing to the Rivers just mentioned. Whatsoever is necessary to human Life, as Rice in abundance, with Corn and Fruits; is here produced; as also good Wines, and the very best Sugar in all the Empire. In the City they not only manufacture Linen Cloths, and print them in Variety of Colours, but work whatever is made in any other Part of the *Indies*. Tho' they reckon it 150 Leagues from *Labor* to *Agra*, yet is there a Causey all the way, planted with the most beautiful Rows of Trees in the Universe. The Trees are high, bushy, and their Branches very long. It is conjectured, but without any solid Reason, that *Labor* is built upon the Ruins of the antient *Bucephalé*, which *Alexander the Great* erected in Memory of his famous Horse. *Labor*, in fact, is but a modern City, and not long ago was but an inconsiderable Town. Besides, tho' the Name *Alexander*, as I before remarked, be known in *Indostan*, the People there never heard a Word about his Horse.

*Kouli Kan*  
pursues  
the Go-  
vernor.

But to return to our History: *Kouli Kan* followed close at the Governor of *Labor*'s Heels, who retired precipitately towards his Capital, and threw himself into it with the few People that accompanied him. The *Schah*, without permitting his Soldiers to spoil the Dead, or to pillage the Camp which the Vice-roy had abandoned, marched directly

to



to *Labor*, and arrived there a few Hours after the Vice-roy had got Entrance. Every thing there was in the utmost Confusion; the Inhabitants were in a great Consternation for the Defeat of their Vice-roy, and the Garrison appeared to be no less disheartened.

In the midst of the Surprise arrived *Kouli Takes the Kan*, and, making an advantageous Use of the City. great Number of Scaling-Ladders which he had got made by Advice of his *European* Engineers, he ordered the Place to be stormed: But, notwithstanding the Bravery of the *Persian* Soldiers, and the Consternation of those within, *Sik-keria-kan*, at the Head of some intrepid *Indians*, sustained the Assault with a great deal of Vigour, and repulsed even the Troops of *Kouli Kan*. Reflecting however, that it was impossible long to make head against victorious Troops, commanded by such a General, he capitulated, and the *Schah* granted him generously the Terms he demanded, except that of being conducted with his Garrison to *Mah-met-Cha*. For his own part indeed, he had Leave to retire whither he would; but for his Garrison, which were still pretty numerous, the Victor detained them Prisoners of War.

When the Tidings of all these Events State of came to the Ears of the *Indian* Monarch, he the two was upon full March to relieve *Labor*. But Armies. Affairs having thus changed their Situation, it was necessary for him to change his Design, and, instead of advancing, to make a Halt. He did so, and extending his Army by Parties, ordered Possession to be taken of all the Avenues of the Kingdom of *Labor*,  
in

in hopes to surround, and as it were ensnare the *Persians*. His united Army amounted, according to Report, to above 500,000 Horse, and a Number of Infantry in proportion. But among this incredible Number of Soldiers, there was not perhaps one who did not tremble at the very Name of *Kouli Kan*; whereas the *Persians* were full of Confidence and Resolution. All *Indostan* had a Sensation of the Terror that seemed to have seized her whole Army; and the Peasant, as well as the Citizen, was in a Consternation that cannot be expressed.

*Mahmet-Cha*, with the main Body of his Army, entrenched himself in an advantageous Post. *Kouli Kan*, he was in hopes, would be obliged at least to return as he came, for want of Subsistence in that Province. But the *Persian* made a Detachment of 30,000 Men, who compleated the Subjection of all the rest of the Province, and brought in more Provisions than their Army had need of. Far otherwise was it in the *Mogul's* Camp, from which *Kouli Kan* intercepted, and cut off all the Convoys; and tho' the *Indians* are naturally extreme temperate, such a frightful Number of People could not subsist without eating. In a word, they soon saw themselves famished by the very People they had been in hopes of starving to Death. It was to no purpose that they enlarged the Escortes, which were to conduct the Supplies to their Camp; 500 *Persian* Horse would appear on a sudden, without having been seen before, and make no Scruple to attack 10,000 of the *Mogul* Cavalry: They beat them, took all their Stores, and brought

brought them to their own Army, or burnt them upon the Spot, to prevent their doing the Enemy any good.

Things were in this Condition when the *Sadat Kan* *Omrah Sadat-Can*, *Souba* or Governor of *A-* arrived in *out*, arrived at the *Indian Army*. *Mahmet-Cha* *Mahmet-Cha's Army* had sent for him, to assist him both with his Courage and Counsel, in this critical State of Affairs. *Sadat-Can* had in reality a great deal of Capacity, and as much Bravery: But he was born a *Persian*, which alone might suffice to render him suspected; not to mention that he was the sworn Enemy of *Commarudien Can*, who passed for the Emperor's chief Favourite.

Being consulted by his imperial Majesty, *Sadat-Can* represented to him, with a great deal of Force, the general Consternation into which the ill Success of this War had thrown all *Indostan*, and how necessary it was to act with Vigour and Resolution in order to change the Face of Affairs; gave him to understand that the Slowness of his Proceedings, and his natural Effeminacy, were the Cause of all these Disasters; and advised him to send for the Prince *Amet-Cha*, his Son, who wanted neither Courage, Prudence, nor Vigilance, and who infallibly would inspire new Life into the Troops. The Emperor followed this Advice in part: He sent immediately for the Prince *Amet-Cha*, in a Litter all shining with *As does* Gold, Pearls, and precious Stones; but gave also the him, when he arrived, very little Authority *Prince* in the Army. *Amet-Cha*

After the Prince was come, *Mahmet-Cha* advanced towards *Kernal* or *Karnal*, dragging  
F with

with him a Train of Artillery equal to the enormous Number of his Troops. It consisted of 1200 Pieces of Cannon, most of them Brasses, and 50 Mortars. All these formidable Preparations were augmented by 500 Elephants, loaded with Towers and armed Men, *Kouli Kan's* Army, with all the Reinforcements it had received lately from *Persia*, did not amount to 80,000 Soldiers; which were but a Handful in comparison of the prodigious Number of their Enemies. But what cannot Valour and Confidence perform?

Expecta-

tions from  
a Battle.

The two Armies were only two Leagues from each other; which Proximity gave room to think that there would very soon be a Battle, such a Battle as would determine the Fate of the great *Mogul*, and reduce him from the proudest of Princes to the most abject of Mortals, or make him at once the Sovereign of *Asia*.

*Sadat-Can* pretended the utmost Loyalty to *Mahmet-Cha*, who, as he had occasion of such an able Counsellor, dissembled his Suspicion, and even prevailed upon *Commardien-Can* to suspend his Resentment, and to second the *Souba* of *Abut* in whatever regarded the Good of the State.

*Kouli Kan* Mean while *Schah Nadir*, being resolved to attack the come to a general and decisive Action, advanced at the Head of 6000 Horse, to take a View of the *Mogul* Army. This mighty Host, which covered a Tract of above Six Leagues Extent, was in some Places very well entrenched; but in others more indifferently, where they had wanted *European* Engineers. The *Schah* saw the Advantage, and, tho' attended

tended with not the tenth Part of his own little Army, ventured to penetrate into one of those weak Parts of the Entrenchment, where his Men cut in pieces and pillaged all they met. This happened to be *Sadat-Can's* Quarter, who being instantly informed that the *Persians* were plundering his Baggage, repaired thither with a Reinforcement of Horse, commanded by *Rajas*, and accompanied by Prince *Amet-Cha* and *Commarudien-Can*. A very sharp and bloody Combat ensued, which lasted near two Hours; so long did this Handful of *Persians*, with *Kouli Kan* at their Head, dispute the Ground: At last, however, they were obliged to give way to Numbers, and retire with only a part of their Booty, the rest having been retaken.

Tho' the *Indians* could boast that they had Loss in this once repulsed the *Persians*, they nevertheless paid so dear for the Advantage, that it had almost been better for them not to have obtained it. Besides a great many common Soldiers, they lost several Officers of the first Rank. *Sadat-Can*, having received a Wound, was thrown to the Earth, and trampled under Foot by the Horses and Elephants; notwithstanding which, they accused him of holding Intelligence with *Schah Nadir*. *Commarudien-Can* was so dangerously wounded, that he died a few Days after. As most of the *Omrabs* and *Rajas* charged the first with having been the Cause of all this Misfortune, tho' he lost his Life fighting valiantly; upon that Accusation *Mahmet-Cha* confiscated the Money and Effects of the Deceased, whose



Wife and Children were thereby reduced to Beggary.

*Mahmet-  
Cha de-  
sires a  
Peace.*

However, tho' *Kouli Kan* likewise lost a great many Men in the Skirmish I have been describing, this did not hinder his advancing nearer the *Mogul's* Camp, in full Resolution to come to a decisive Battle. This was not the Design of *Mahmet Cha*, whose Eyes were so opened by what had lately passed, that he had no Ambition to try his Fortune against that of the *Schah*. Already had he resolved to sue for Peace, and to obtain it at any Price whatever. With this View he sent to the *Persian* Camp, and demanded a Passport for the *Omrah Nazamelmolk*, whom he had nominated his Plenipotentiary to the *Schah*, with a full and unlimited Commission; engaging himself to confirm and ratify all that he should stipulate in the way of an Accommodation.

His Mini-  
nister con-  
fers with  
*Kouli Kan*.

The Passport being granted, *Nazamelmolk* repaired to *Kouli Kan's* Quarters, and had a Conference with that Monarch. At first he endeavoured to give him an advantageous Idea of the Condition of the *Mogul* Army, and the Intrepidity of their Emperor: But *Kouli Kan* was not to be imposed on in that manner. *I freely dispense*, says he, *with all your Rodomontade: I know perfectly well to what State your Army is reduced. All the important Places in this Kingdom I am Master of, and my Troops have taken Possession of all the Avenues. You have no Provisions in your Camp, and in four Days I will either make you all Slaves without fighting, or oblige you to perish with*

with Hunger, or, which is but little better, to disband and separate, to wander like Vagabonds from Place to Place, exposed every Hour to Detachments of my Army, who will use you without Mercy.

The Omrah, perceiving it was to no purpose to dissemble, freely confessed that the Mogul Army was upon the Point of perishing, and that this was the Motive which engaged the Emperor his Master to desire a Peace. "To obtain it," replied the Schah, Mahmet-Cha ought to weigh well the following Particulars.

"First, that I have invaded this Country for a Barrier to my own, and to recover whatever lies on my Side the Indus, which was ceded to Abbas King of Persia and his Successors, by Homayum (1) Emperor of Indostan, in virtue of an Agreement between these two Princes.

Secondly, That I am also come to take Possession of the famous Mogul Throne, made by Order of Tamerlane the Great, and valued at Nine Carols or Korours (about 12 Millions Sterling) and to carry it out of India into Persia.

Thirdly, That the Great Mogul Homayum having borrowed 10,000 Soldiers of Abbas the Great, to support him against the Intrigues of the Officers of his Army, after he had re-ascended the Throne, and that those

(1) This is the same Prince that was dethroned by the Patans, as I observed before. Schah Abbas, surnamed the Great, King of Persia, restored him, and in recompence had the Country here mentioned granted by a Treaty between the two Monarchs.

Soldiers having continued in the *Mogul's* Service, without the Court of *Persia's* ever receiving any thing in return; *Kouli Kan* demanded Satisfaction for them of *Mahmet-Cha*.

*Fourthly*, That if the *Mogul* Emperor desired to make Peace with him, he must consent to have it stipulated in the Treaty, that in case either of them should happen to be attacked, the other should be obliged to furnish him with a certain Supply of Men and Money.

*Finally*, That having, since his being seated on the Throne of *Persia*, sent Embassadors to *Mahmet-Cha*, he desired to know the Reason why they were so long detained, and why the *Mogul* had never sent a suitable Answer to the Letters they brought."

Who requires an Interview with the Great *Mogul*.

*Kouli Kan* ordered these five Articles to be put in Writing, and delivered to *Nazamel-mulk*; to whom he said farther: *I command you to tell your Prince from me, that he will do well to meet me to-morrow Noon, in the middle Space between the two Camps. He must not come attended with more than three Persons, whom he may chuse from among his Omrahs and Rajas. We can better treat of a Peace between ourselves, than by Agency of Embassadors. In the mean Time, let him prepare his Answer to the five Points in question.*

The *Mogul* Court had no sooner seen these Demands, but they felt their Fears redouble. It was requisite however to come to a Resolution. In want as they were of all the Necessaries of Life, tho' the most numerous, they were not the strongest Party. The most prudent Method was thought to be, to

give

give way to the Necessity of the Times, and to grant all that was stipulated in *Schah Nadir's* Demands.

The main Point was, how they could venture upon the Interview required. *Mahmet-Cha* apprehended it was only a Snare, to get Possession of his Person: But as his Fortune could not be more deplorable than it was at present, he determined with himself to pass over every prudential Reason, that might advise him against putting himself into the Power of his Enemy. He punctually appeared therefore, at the Hour and Place appointed, with only three Attendants, among whom was the *Omrah Nazamelmolk*. As he passed along, he saw all the Avenues, both to the Right and Left, occupied by *Persian* Soldiers, and at his Arrival perceived *Kouli Kan* himself, in the Midst of a large Body of his Generals, and other principal Officers of his Army. Which is granted.

The first Civilities being over, *Kouli Kan* intreated the *Mogul* to accompany him to the *Persian* Camp, where he gave him a magnificent Entertainment. After Dinner, the two Monarchs conferred together an Hour, when *Mahmet-Cha* declared he accepted the Preliminaries which the Conqueror had sent him. Well then, said *Kouli Kan*, Their if you are satisfied, the Treaty shall soon be drawn up. There is nothing farther to do, but to consider of the Re-imbursement of those Expences which I have been obliged to be at in the present War, and of the annual Tribute which you are to pay me. *Mahmet-Cha* begged of him to explain himself on this Head, and declare Conversation.

declare what he made those two Articles amount to. *Kouli Kan* fixed the first at 40 *Kourours* or *Carols*, about 52 Millions 520,000 Pounds, and the other at 180 Millions of *Roupees*, which make 22 Millions 500,000 Pounds Sterling. The *Mogul*, frightened at this prodigious Sum, replied smartly, "That he would sooner surrender to him the Empire of *Indostan*, than engage to comply with such an exorbitant Demand." *You can surrender me nothing*, said *Kouli Kan* in wrath, *which is not mine before. Art thou ignorant that the Fortune of War has made me not only Master of thy Dominions, but of thy own Life? However, thou mayst return: I give thee twenty four Hours longer to resolve in, after which I shall see what I have to do farther.*

*Mahmet-Cha* holds  
a Council.

These Words were a Thunder-Clap in the unhappy *Mahmet-Cha's* Ears. He had no Power to say a Word more, but immediately departed to his own Army, summoned a Council, and gave a Relation of all that had passed. The most Prudent of the Assembly were struck with Consternation, and durst not declare their Opinion. But the young Prince *Amet-Cha*, the *Mogul's* Son, was for dying Sword in Hand, and making one desperate Effort to save the Empire. Most of the young *Omrahs* and *Rajas* came into his Sentiment; while those of more Experience thought directly otherwise. Among the latter there was one who represented, "That the Army was ready to perish with Famine, not having eat any thing for two Days past; that the Soldiers deserted by Hundreds, and went over to the Enemy,



Enemy, who abounded with every thing; in a Word, that at the least Rumour of a Battle they might perhaps all disband; of which there was the more probability, because among those that remained, there was not one who did so on any other Principle, than the Hope of a speedy Accommodation, which would put an end to all his Misery: That therefore he could not understand what any Man meant by talking of coming to Action, it being impossible to fight without Troops."

The Importance of these Reasons made And a-  
them attended to, and united the Minds of grees to  
all present in one Opinion, which was, to grant all  
submit to the Conditions prescribed by *Schah Kouli*  
*Nadir*. When the Council broke up, *Mah-Kan's De-*  
*met Cha* sent *Nazamelmolk* to conclude the mands.  
Treaty with the *Persian* Monarch, and to  
conduct with him, as a Present, an Elephant  
of extraordinary Magnitude, richly capari-  
soned, adorned with Pearls and precious  
Stones, and loaded with 400,000 *Roupees*  
in Specie. The Treaty was soon drawn up  
and signed. All the smooth Persuasions of  
*Nazamelmolk* could not mollify *Kouli Kan*  
upon any one Article of it, and the Pleni-  
potentiary saw himself obliged to give way  
to the inflexible Temper of the Victor.

No sooner was the Treaty signed, but But disa-  
*Nazamelmolk* returned to his Master's Camp, vows the  
to procure his Ratification. The *Indian Treaty*  
Monarch disavowed all that had been done, when signa-  
without any one's knowing the Cause of red.  
this so sudden and extraordinary an Altera-  
tion. It gave the greater Cause of Surprise,

as

as the Condition of this unfortunate Prince, far from being mended, grew worse and worse every Hour, as the Want of Necessaries became more sensible. For the *Orientals* make War without great Preparations, without Store of Provisions, without Magazines and Places of Arms; so that their Armies both come together and disband with great Facility.

And persists in it.

What could equal *Nazamelmolck's* Astonishment, when he heard his Master call him Traitor, and not only refuse to ratify the Treaty that had just been concluded, but accuse him with having made an ill Use of the Full Powers that had been granted him? The *Omrab* represented to the Monarch, "That it behoved him to take Care what he did, for that the Affair in Hand was no Trifle; that nothing less was at Stake than the Safety of his Army, his Empire, and perhaps his own Life; that this was not the Way to treat a Conqueror, who had both Power and Resolution to do any thing, and whom he should rather think of appeasing by a submissive Behaviour, than to irritate him by a Breach of Faith." All this had no Effect on *Mahmet-Cba's* Mind, which was already fixed. The only Answer he gave the Minister was, that he must e'en go back and fetch him better Conditions, if he expected to have them ratified. Then turning away, he would not hear a Word more upon the Subject.

*Nazamelmolck*, in the utmost Consternation, returned to *Kauli Kan*, in order once more to endeavour to soften him: But no sooner

sooner did the Conqueror hear the Cause of this precipitate Return, but he put the Negotiator in Irons, and told him with a fierce and menacing Air; *I have kept my Word; I granted Peace to my Enemy: He desires War, and he shall have it; the Perfidious Man shall perish by the Sword, with all his Family, and all his Court.* Immediately he marched towards the Mogul's Camp, and sent word to Mahmet-Cha, that he was just going to massacre Him and all his Army. That very Evening he gave Orders to his own Troops, to be ready for the Combat by Break of Day next Morning; enjoining the Soldiers to kill every one they met, to destroy the Mogul's Camp by Fire and Sword, to seize that Prince alive or dead, to violate his Women, and to give no Quarter to any of his Soldiers or Officers.

The Schah  
enraged,  
gives  
cruel Orders.

Nazamelmolok, informed of the cruel Orders which Kouli Kan had given in the first Emotions of his Rage, intreated earnestly to have leave to speak to this Conqueror. His Request was granted; his Chains were taken off, and he was brought before the Monarch. Throwing himself at the Feet of the affronted Prince, he supplicated him to suspend the Effects of his just Anger, for that he did not yet despair of working somewhat on Mahmet-Cha, if he might have Permission to visit him once more. The Schah, affected with the humble Posture of this Omrah, yielded to his Petition, and not only engaged his Word, that he would not begin the Attack for 24 Hours longer, but permitted him to return during that Interval, according to his Desire.

Nazamelmolok  
gains more  
Time.

Naza-

Finds the  
Mogul in  
Despair.

*Nazamelmolk* found the *Great Mogul* provided with several sorts of Poisons, which he had got ready prepared to take away his own Life, and the Lives of all his Wives and Children, in case *Kouli Kan* persisted to impose on him such severe Conditions.

At the Sight of these Preparations the *Omrah* trembled, exhorted the Monarch to arm himself with Resolution, represented to him that true Greatness of Soul did not consist in depriving a Man's self of Life, but in bearing Adversity with a generous Temper, and knowing how to give way to Time and Necessity.

The *Mogul*, who probably had no great Desire to die, relished these solid Reasons, and asked the Man who gave them, if he had brought him any Diminution of his Misfortunes. *Nazamelmolk* answered in the Negative, told him the *Schah* was inflexible, and that he had been just upon the Point of charging the Imperial Army, if by his most earnest Prayer he had not diverted him from his Purpose, and obtained a fresh Truce of 24 Hours more.

Who rat-  
fies the  
Treaty  
too late.

This so near Prospect of Danger did not hasten the *Mogul's* Resolution: The Day was spent in Consultations and Deliberations, and it was not till Evening that he prevailed on himself to ratify the Treaty. It was left in the Hands of *Kouli Kan*, and *Nazamelmolk* set out to demand it. But the propitious Time was elapsed, and the *Schah's* Mind entirely hardened: He had already given his irrevocable Orders for marching to the Attack, and would be no more importuned upon

upon the Subject. *Nazamelmolk* was remanded into Irons, and the Signal being given, the whole *Persian* Army began to be in Motion.

*Mahmet-Cha*, informed of this, resolved And prepared at least to make a Virtue of Necessity. He prepared for drew up his Army behind their Entrenchments, and ordered all his Artillery to play. The Consternation was so great, that the Engineers and their Train fled from their Duty, and the whole Army appeared in an inexpressible Disorder. Mean while the *Persian* Cannon began to roar, and the Army of *Kouli Kan* advanced in good Order, under the Conduct of that Hero, who rode upon a beautiful *Turkish* Horse.

The Attack began on the right Wing of His right the *Moguls*, which extended to an Eminence Wing that bounded the Plain. Two Hundred routed. Field-Pieces, well supplied, soon made a Breach in the Enemy's Entrenchments; and then the *Persian* Infantry coming to close Quarters with the *Moguls*, the latter were soon repulsed. They threw themselves in Disorder upon the Cavalry, which advanced to charge, and terrified them in such a Manner, that they fled without striking a Blow. All the Posts were instantly abandoned, the *Indians* not so much as waiting to be attacked, in order to excuse their Flight. The *Persians* pursued briskly these Fugitives, and made a dreadful Slaughter among them. It was *Amet-Cha*, the Emperor's Son before-mentioned, who commanded this Wing. He was killed upon the Spot by one of *Sehab Nadir's* Guards, while he was making his  
G utmost



utmost Efforts to bring back his Troops to the Charge.

Himself While this passed upon the Right, the  
taken with *Mogul*, surrounded by *Rajas* and *Ragipous*,  
his Wives who had sworn rather to fall every Man of  
and Gran- them, than to abandon him, supported his  
dees. Fortune with a little better Grace. But

seeing himself surrounded on all sides, and not willing to expose so many brave Men to certain Death, he sent to inform *Kouli Kan*, that he was ready to surrender at Discretion; that he only begged of him to let the Battle cease, and to pardon those who still continued upon the Defensive, but who were all willing to lay down their Arms. This Message disarmed the Fury of the *Schah*, who gave that Moment such good Orders, that instantly there was a Suspension of the Combat; during which the *Mogul*, with all his Women, rode up to the *Schah*, and submitted to his Mercy. All that remained of the *Indian Troops* had their Arms taken from them: Their Camp, and all their Riches, fell into the Hands of the *Persians*. As to the Elephants, they had never been untied from the Place where they stood, their Conductors having abandoned them at the Signal of the Engagement.

How *Kou- This Action happened near a Village called*  
*li Kan Corbaal*, twenty-five Leagues from *Thom-à-*  
treats him *bat*, on the 22d of February 1739. *Kouli Kan* at the first would not see *Mahmet-Gha*, for fear (as was reasonably thought) of augmenting his Affliction, by the Presence of his Conqueror. He had him conducted into a magnificent Tent, and gave him a Guard, which,

which, at the same time that it did him Honour, prevented his Escape. He likewise secured the greatest Part of the *Omrabs*, or *Grandees*, and endeavoured to gain over the *Rajas*. Some of the Former very soon forgot their antient Master, and engaged in the Conqueror's Interest: Nor were there even wanting those who advised this Hero to rid his Hands of *Mahmet-Cha*, or to shut him up for Life, and to unite the two Empires of *Indostan* and *Persia*: But *Kouli Kan* rejected all these Counsels.

It is impossible to compute the Value of The Vic- the Booty, which the *Persians* made in the torsets out *Mogul's* Camp: Camels were loaded with for *Deli*. the very Jewels and ready Coin that they found there. *Kouli Kan* having got these collected together, and taken the greatest Part of them into his own Hands, resolved to pay a Visit to *Deli*, the Capital of *Indostan*; and, as soon as his Troops were a little recovered from their Fatigues, set out for that purpose.

*Mahmet-Cha*, during the Journey, was carried in a sort of Prison, placed upon the Back of an Elephant. In this Vehicle the Prisoner lies upon his Back, and can neither see nor speak to any Body. His Wives were carried in the same Manner; and as for the captive *Omrabs*, they were convey'd in Litters, or Sedans.

*Deli*, *Dehli*, or *Dilli*, which the *Indians* likewise call *Sjah Iboen-à-bat*, that is, the Situation of that Royal Residence or Colony of *Cha-John*, is City. named in Latin *Dellium* by Father *Riccioli*. It is situated in 78 Degrees 20 Minutes Longi-

Longitude, and in the Latitude of 28 Degrees 25 Minutes North.

*New Deli.* Writers distinguish two *Deli's*, the Old and the New, of which the latter was built by *Cha-Jehan* the Father of *Aureng-Zeb*, (1) at the beginning of the preceding Century. It joins to Old *Deli*, and was denominated by its Founder *Cha-Jehan-Abad*, which the *Indians* pronounce, as before-mentioned, *Jhoen-à-bat*. His Design was to make it the Capital of his Empire, in the room of *Agra*, where he found the Heats too excessive. The Ruins of the old City furnished Materials for building the New, which stands in a level champain Country, upon the Banks of a River called *Gemma*. It runs along only on one side of that River, in such manner as to form a kind of Bow, or Crescent, and, except next to the Water, is every where surrounded with Walls. These Walls are of Brick, without Ditches, and flanked only with round Towers in the antient Manner, at the Distance of an hundred Paces from each other; with a Rampart of Earth behind all of 4 or 5 Foot thick. If we include with *Deli* a very long Suburb, which extends towards *Labor*, and alone seems like a regular Town with three or four Suburbs, we shall find it inhabited for above a League in a strait Line. But the Circumference of the whole Place, including Gardens and vacant Spaces, is almost incredible.

(1) See *Bernier's Voyages*, and *Martiniers's Dictionary*.

The Citadel, in which stands the Seraglio and other Royal Apartments, is built in a Semi-circle facing the River ; yet not so close to the Banks but that there is an extensive gravelly Area between, where the Elephants are daily taught their Exercise, and where the Troops of the *Omrahs* and *Rajas* are frequently reviewed in Presence of the Emperor, who on that Occasion looks out at one of the Windows of his Palace. The Walls of this Fortress, like those of the City, are flanked with round Towers in the antient Manner, built partly of Brick, and partly of a red Stone that nearly resembles Marble. They are somewhat higher, stronger, and thicker than those of the Town, towards which are pointed from them several Field-Pieces, to awe the Inhabitants. A beautiful Moat, lined with hewn Stone, and full of Water and Fish, surrounds it entirely, except fronting the River ; and without the Moat extends all around a very spacious and verdant Garden, which in all Seasons of the Year is full of Flowers and blooming Shrubs. This Garden is again encompassed with the Royal Square, into which open the two principal Gates of the Citadel, that lead into the two capital Streets of the whole City. In this vast Opening are erected the Tents of the *Rajas*, who are in the Emperor's Pay, and wait there to perform their Office of mounting Guard once a Week. The *Omrahs* have Barracks, and do Duty in the Fortifications. Early in the Morning they bring out upon this Square the King's Horses, which are kept in a prodigious long Stable

The Citadel and Seraglio.

near adjacent. The same Place serves for the Market of several sorts of Commodities, and the Rendezvous of an infinite Number of Quacks and Jugglers.

Chief  
Streets.

The two chief Streets in *Deli*, that is, those which run strait from the two Gates of the Citadel and the great Square, are about 25 or 30 Paces broad, and extend in length as far as a good Eye can carry; but that which leads to the Gate of *Labor* is much the longest of the two. With regard to the Buildings, these Streets are every where much alike, and consist in Front of two long Ranges of Piazzas, without any Apartments over them. These Arcades are usually separated by thin Partitions, which make them into so many open Shops, in which Artisans work, Bankers transact their Affairs, and Tradesmen dispose of their Commodities. At Night they shut up their respective Goods in Ware-houses, which lie at the Back of every Arch, and where they are kept till Morning under Lock and Key. Over these Magazines, and quite behind the Arcades, are raised the Dwelling-houses of the Tradesmen, which appear pretty enough towards the Street, and are in fact very commodious and airy. The Top of each Arch serves for an Area before the House, where the Inhabitants come to look down in the Street, and where they sometimes lie and sleep. But these handsome Houses are not always contiguous like the Arcades, there being many of the Ware-houses that have only a small Apartment a-top or on one Side of them, which is not seen in the Street; the



the Masters of the Shops having their Dwelling-houses elsewhere, to which they retire in the Evening.

There are five other Streets in *Deli* that resemble the above described two, but are neither so long nor so strait; and these are every where crossed by an infinite Number of small ones. In these the petty *Omrabs*, the Lawyers, and the Magistrates, have their Houses promiscuously with private Persons. Very few of them are entirely of Brick or Stone, and much the greatest Number have only earthen Walls, with thatch'd Roofs, Courts before, and Gardens behind. Their Inside is agreeable enough, because, over and above their gay Furniture, you see a Range of long hard Canes, that support the Straw Covering, and are equally strong and beautiful; and the Walls are plaistered with a very fine white Sort of Lime.

As to the Inside of the Citadel, which incloses several Royal Buildings besides the Seraglio, there is nothing remarkable at the Entrance but two Stone Elephants, which stand on the two Sides of the Gates. The Statue of *Jemel*, the Famous *Raja* of *Chitor*, Statues. is upon one of them, and that of *Polta* his Brother upon the other. These were the Men, who with their Mother, a Woman of astonishing Spirit, gave the most extraordinary Proofs of Valour in the Sieges that they sustained against *Akbar*, and chose rather to be killed in sallying forth than to surrender. It was in regard to this surprising Bravery, that their Enemies themselves thought them worthy

worthy of having Statues erected to their Memory.

Streets  
within the  
Citadel.

After you have passed this Gate, which is one of the two above-mentioned, you come into a pretty large Street, which is divided in the Middle by a Canal of running Water. On each Side of this Street there is an Elevation of 5 or 6 Foot high, and four broad, and behind it a Row of close Arcades, resembling a long Gate-way. Upon this Elevation sit all the Clerks, Comptrollers, and other Officers, where they perform the Business of their Function, without being incommoded by the People and Horses that pass below in the Street. The Water of the Canal expands itself all over the Seraglio, and then making two Streams falls into the Moat and fills it. Another Canal, that runs under Covert 5 or 6 Leagues, brings this Water out of the main River, and was conducted with much Labour and Expence cross the Country, and even amid Rocks, which in many Places they were obliged to cut thro'.

When you enter the Citadel by the other Gate, you come likewise to a broad long Street, that has, like the former, its Divans or Elevations on the Sides, with Shops above instead of Arcades. This is properly a *Basar* or Market, which is very convenient during the rainy and sultry Seasons, because being vaulted all over, with Openings a-top to let in the Light, it defends against all the Inclemencies of Weather.

Besides these two large Streets, there are a great Number of small ones on the Right and Left, which lead to the Apartments where the

the *Omrabs* keep Guard. These are very magnificent Buildings, and have nothing of the Appearance of Guard-houses. You see besides many other Divans and Tents erected in different Places, which are the Offices or Compting-houses of Men in Posts. Likewise many spacious Halls, whither all sorts of Mechanicks repair in the Morning, work Mecha- there all Day, and in the Evening go home nicks. to their Houses; every one leading an easy, tranquil Life, without aspiring above that Rank or Condition he was born in. Thus one Family are all Taylors, another all Shoemakers by Descent, and not one among them marries but to a Daughter of the same Profession. This Rule is religiously observed, not only among the *Pagans*, who are obliged to it by their Law, but with very few Exceptions among the *Mahometans* themselves.

Beyond all these Apartments, you come at The *Am-* last to the *Amkas*, a sort of Royal Structure. *kas*, or It is a large square Court, surrounded with Place of Arcades, without any Building upon them. Audience. The Arches are separated from each other by a Wall, with a small Postern that makes a Passage thro' them all. Over the great Gate, that is in the Middle of one of the Sides of this Square, there is a large Divan next to the Court, called *Nagar-Kanay*. This is the Rendez-vous of the Trumpets, Haut-bois, and Drums, which play together in Concert at certain Hours, both by Day and Night. Over-against this Gate, and beyond all the Court, there is a large and magnificent Hall, supported by several Ranks of Pillars, which, as the Cieling, are all neatly painted as well and

and gilt. This Hall is spacious and lofty, and opens on the three Sides that lead into the Court. In the Middle of the other Wall, which separates it from the great Seraglio, there is an Opening like a kind of Window, very broad and high, and so far from the Ground that you cannot reach the Bottom of it with your Hand. Here it is that the King, or Emperor of the *Moguls*, appears seated upon his Throne, with his Sons by the Sides of him, and several Eunuchs standing near, some of whom drive away the Flies with Peacocks Tails, and others give him fresh Air with large Fans. At some Distance below, all the *Omrabs*, all the *Rajas*, and the Embassadors of Foreign Princes, stand around him upon a Divan, inclosed with a Silver Balustrade; their Eyes cast down, and their Hands across upon their Stomachs. Lower still are the *Manebdars*, who also stand in the same Posture; and beyond them, spread over all the Hall and the Court, a vast Croud of People of all Ranks. Here his Majesty about Noon every Day gives Audience to his People in general; from whence the Hall received the Name of *Ankas*, which signifies the common Place of Audience.

The *Mogul's* Divisions at the Time of Audience.

This Ceremony lasts about an Hour and an half; during which Time, the Monarch diverts himself with looking at some of the finest Horses in his Stables, and several Elephants, who are brought out, and walked before him. The Elephants have their Bodies clean washed, and painted Black, except that two large Streaks of Red descend from the top of the Head to the Trunk, where they

they unite. They are also covered, on this Occasion, with an embroidered Cloth, from each Side of which hangs down a Silver Bell, and the End of a large Silver Chain, to which the Bell is fastened, and which passes over the Creature's Back. The Tails of Cows, which are brought from *Great Thibet*, and are extremely white and dear, stick out from their Ears like large Whiskers; and two small Elephants, well dressed, walk by the Side of of each large one, as if to wait on him. When these vast Colossusses come before the King, the Conductor, who sits on the Shoulders of each with a large Iron Hook in his Hand, pricks his Beast, and by kicking him makes him bend one Knee, lift up his Trunk in the Air, and set up a sort of Howl, which the People take for a Salutation of his Majesty.

What serves for a Throne at this Ceremo- His  
ny is a small Bed, about the Size of one of Throne or  
our Campaign Beds, standing upon four Co-Bed of  
lums, with a Tester, a Back, a Bolster, and State.  
a Counterpane, all over beset with Diamonds.  
When the Monarch comes to sit upon it,  
they spread over it a Coverlid of Gold Bro-  
cade, or some other rich variegated Stuff. He  
ascends to it by three low Steps, of about two  
Foot in length. On one Side of the Bed  
stands an Umbrella, raised upon a Pole of a-  
bout the length of a Half-Pike, and to every  
Column is fastened some Piece of the King's  
Armour, as to one his Buckler, to another his  
Sabre, to the Third his Bow, and to the  
Fourth his Quiver and Arrows.

From the great Hall of the *Amkas* you  
enter



The *Cofel-Kame*. enter another less large, but however very spacious, richly painted and gilded, and with the Pavement raised 4 or 5 Feet above the Ground, like a magnificent Anti-Chamber. Here the Emperor, sitting in a Chair, with his *Omrahs* standing round him, gives private Audience to his Officers, receives their Accompts, and treats of the most important Affairs of State. They are obliged to be present every Evening at this Assembly, as in the Morning at the *Amkas*. They call this State-Room the *Cofel Kamé*.

Mosques.

On the Left Hand of the Court that contains the first Hall, you see a small Mosque, extremely well built, the Dome of which is all over covered with Lead most beautifully gilt, which makes it be taken for massy Gold. Here the Monarch goes every Day to Prayers, except *Fridays*, when he repairs to the great Mosque in the Middle of the City, where it stands upon a Rock that was made level to support it, and to give a fine Prospect all around, especially to the four Streets that here meet, and point directly to the four Corners of the Mosque. The three Entries of this Temple are magnificent. To arrive at them, you ascend 25 or 30 Steps of large beautiful Stones. Every one of these Steps quite surrounds the Place, except the last, which is cas'd with other large hewn Stones, to cover the Unevenness of the Rock. This noble Elevation contributes much to make the Building appear to advantage. The whole Structure is of Marble, and all its Gates are covered with Plates of Brass, exceedingly well wrought. Over the Principal appear some small

small Turrets of white Marble, and upon the back Part of the Mosque arise three large Domes, which are also of white Marble within and without. The middle one is much the largest, and higher than the others. All the Body of the Mosque, from these three Domes to the grand Portal, is open a-top, on account of the extreme Heat of the Country. The Pavement consists entirely of Marble Squares.

When his Majesty goes on *Fridays* to pay The Mo. his Devotions at this Temple, two or three <sup>gul's</sup> Cavalcade to Hundred Musketeers, drawn up in Ranks, wait for him at the Gates of the Citadel thro' the great Mosque. which he passes, and about the same Number are planted along the great Street that leads to the Mosque. He rides upon an Elephant richly caparisoned, under a Canopy supported by Pillars that are finely painted and gilt; or else on a Throne shining with Gold and Azure, that stands on a kind of Litter, or rather portable Stage, all covered with Scarlet and Brocade, and carried by eight Hundred Men upon their Shoulders. A long Train of *Omrahs* follow him, some on Horse-back, and others in a Sort of Litters, which they call *Paleki*.

There is in *Deli* one more remarkable Building, called the *Princess's Caravansera*; The Princess's Caravansera. because *Begum-Sahib*, eldest Daughter of *Chahab*, had it erected, in order to contribute her Part towards the Embellishment of the City; a Point in which all the *Omrahs* endeavoured to outvie each other, by way of Complaisance to their Sovereign. It is a large Square, surrounded with Arcades, each of which is separated from the others by Wain-

## The HISTORY of

scot Partitions. In the back Part of each Arch there is a small Apartment, and over the whole Range a Gallery, which surrounds the Building, and carries to the same Number of upper as there are lower Rooms. This *Caravanfera* is the Rendezvous of all great Merchants, who come from *Persia*, *Usbeck*, and other foreign Countries. The Apartments are so numerous, that they are seldom all full; and so convenient, that no other Lodging is wanted. Such is the City of *Deli*, the Capital of *Indostan*.

*Kouli Kan* *Kouli Kan* entered this City as a Conqueror, enters *Deli*. before whom every Thing gave way. The People came out to meet him, and strewed all the Ways he passed with Flowers; either thro' a Principle of Fear, or because the Populace are always inconstant, and still imagine they shall find some private Advantage in all Revolutions of this nature.

Account of the Prisoners. The *Persian* Army encamped in the Neighbourhood of *Deli*, and had more Prisoners than their own Number amounted to; no fewer than 200,000, all tied together in Couples, and among them many *Omrabs*. Some of these latter were *Dilaat Mahmet-Can*, the Brother of *Sadat-Can*, of whom we spoke before; *Zoufem-Doulla*, *Can-Dawroen*, *Gusseme-Sjach*, Governor or Vice-roy of *Indostan*, who had been wounded, it was thought, mortally, but had the good Fortune however to escape. His Brother, named *Mossaffoer-Can*, was killed in the Field of Battle: His Son, *Miaffoer*, was taken Prisoner without being wounded; as were also *Wassellu-Can*, *Amies-Can*, *Ali-Mahmet-Can*, *Mir-Haffan-Can*, *Sangina*,

*gina, Affieraf-Can, Aetabaer-Can, Ackkel-Nick-Can, Ali-Achmet-Can, Sjaldet-Can* an *Agwan*, and *Fermin Pihay* Great-Master of the Ordnance; not to mention above three Hundred other Officers of Distinction, whose Names have not been transmitted to *Europe*.

It was a very mortifying Spectacle for the *Indians*, to see so many of their Countrymen, their Relations, their Friends, all in Irons. Not a Man however thought of delivering one of them; whether it was that the Name alone of *Kouli Kan* had struck a Damp upon all their Spirits, or that the People had entertained on Antipathy for *Mahmet-Cha*, and the Grandees of his Court. However that might be, every thing remained quiet; and those Prisoners who were desirous of Liberty, were obliged to buy it at an exorbitant Price; the common Soldiers only excepted, of whom part were sent into *Persia*, to be employed in the Mines; and the rest were sold for Slaves, some at *Deli*, and others in other Cities of *Indostan*, to be carried into foreign Countries. Such was the Fate of this prodigious Number of Troops, which *Mahmet-Cha* had brought into the Field with him. I should have mentioned that 30,000 of them fell in the Field of Battle, or were killed in the Flight.

The first thing *Kouli Kan* did, was to disarm all the Inhabitants of *Deli*. He forbade the *Omrahs* to keep more than one Horse, and one Domestic; which very much mortified those Gentlemen, who till that Time would, some of them, maintain four Hundred Horsemen, with Footmen and Slaves in

proportion. As to the *Rajas*, or Pagan Sovereigns who were Vassals to the *Mogul*, he sent them all home to their own Territories; well knowing, that he had nothing to apprehend from their Quarter, as there was scarce one of them who was not dissatisfied with *Mahmet-Cha*. He also restored to them those of their Subjects that were found among the Prisoners, without Ransom.

He assumes  
pompous  
Titles.

All the Honours that had been paid to the Great *Moguls*, did this Conqueror assume to himself in *Deli*. In every Decree he published, he took the superb Titles of *King above all the Kings who have a long time reigned, Victor over the Turks and the Indians*. He had a Coin struck at *Deli*, in which he was represented on Horse-back, with this pompous Legend round his Effigy.

Catastrophe of the  
*Mogul* Ladies.

The *Moguls* have a House of Pleasure four Leagues from *Deli*, which is very delightful, and built in a good Taste. *Kouli Kan* went thither to pass some Days, and to relax his Spirits a little after the Toils of War. There he gave Orders to have the late Emperor *Mahmet-Cha* brought before him, with all the chief Ladies of his Court. This was done with regard to *Mahmet-Cha*; but as to the Ladies, *Milko Semanio Begum*, Daughter of the deceased Emperor *Farogzier*, imagining that some Violence was intended against her Person, swallowed a subtle Poison which she had artfully concealed, and advised the other Ladies to follow her Example. The greatest Part of them did so, and died with this unfortunate Princess.

*Mahmet-*



## THAMAS KOULI KAN.

77

*Mahmet-Cha* was taken out of his Cage by *Mahmet-Cha* the *Schah's* Order, who received him with great Demonstrations of Affection. They dined together, in company with the chief Officers of the *Persian* Army. After the Repast was over, *Kouli Kan* told the unhappy *Mogul*, that he would give him his Liberty, and re-establish him in his Dominions, the Moment he had frankly owned where all his Treasures were hid, and given sufficient Security for the annual Tribute stipulated in the Treaty; for that it was no more than just to take from him the Means of assisting hereafter the Rebels of *Candahar*.

The *Mogul* consented to all, very sincerely Ratified delivered up his whole Wealth, gave all the Hostages and other Securities that were required, and ratified the Treaty before-mentioned, the Breach of which had been the Occasion of the late Battle. He now thought himself very happy, that he could recover his Empire at any Price.

By this Transaction *Kouli Kan* became Master of all the Riches of the *Indies*. He took Possession of the precious Throne before described, and of all the Jewels of the Crown of *Indostan*.

Furthermore, under Pretence of taking from the *Mogul* all Means of giving future Assistance to the Rebels of *Candahar*, he put it out of his Power, at least for a long while, to recover the Provinces that he had taken from him by this Treaty. He imposed a Tribute, at the rate of so much per Head, upon all the Inhabitants of *Deli*; Which was looked upon as such an Act of Tyranny, that those who had the charge of collecting the Capitation, drew

on themselves the Hatred of all the People. This made no Diminution, however, either of their Severity or their Insolence. The People laid their Complaints before the Conqueror's Feet, who shewed not the least Regard to them. Irritated at this, the Citizens began to give ill Language to his Officers, and even to greet them with Blows; which *Kouli Kan* no sooner heard, but he ordered his Army to march into the City, and live at Discretion upon the Inhabitants. The *Persian* Soldiers committed many Excesses, and used the Natives rather as their Slaves than their Hosts, taking every Opportunity of draining their Purses, and insulting their Persons.

He at-  
tempts to  
seize the  
Effects of  
those who  
died in  
Arms a-  
gainst  
him.

But what entirely alienated Mens Minds from the Conqueror, was the Attempt he made to appropriate to himself all the Effects of the *Grandees*, who died in Arms against him in the preceding Battles. Tho' it was customary for the great *Moguls* to use this Prerogative with regard to all who died, whether in War or otherwise; they took it however very ill that *Kouli Kan* was not content either with the imperial Treasures, or with the exorbitant Taxes that he had imposed upon private Persons, but that his Avarice should carry him even to deprive the Living of their Inheritance from the Dead. In a Word, all his Conduct appeared to them so odious and so tyrannical, that the greatest Part of the *Omrabs*, to whom he had given their Liberty, conspired against his Life.

A Conspi-  
racy a-  
gainst  
him.

On the 17th of *March*, fifty of these *Omrabs*, having assembled privately together, agreed to repair to the *Seraglio* where the *Schah* then

then resided. They were to take all, as much as possible different Ways, and so to meet as it were by accident in the Guard-Room that lay nearest the Conqueror's Person; there to massacre the Soldiers, then to break open the Door of his Apartment, and finally to lay their Oppressor dead at their Feet.

It is not known by what Means *Kouli Kan* He e-  
got Intelligence of this Conspiracy: But thus<sup>scapes, and</sup>  
much is certain, that he was not informed of<sup>the Conspi-</sup>  
it till it was just upon the Point of execution.<sup>rators are</sup>  
He had barely Time to make his Escape into<sup>taken.</sup>  
a Mosque not far remote, and to send Word  
to the Captain of his Guards, that a Compa-  
ny of Traitors were coming to assassinate him.  
The Officer was putting his Men in a Posture  
of Defence, when the *Omrahs* entered the  
Room Sword in Hand, and were bravely re-  
ceived at the Pike's End. The Conspirators  
who did not expect to find Men so much up-  
on their Guard (for it was late at Night) be-  
haved with great Resolution, and pushed with  
their Swords to the Right and Left: But they  
were very soon convinced of their Mistake,  
and obliged to surrender. Not one of them  
escaped, nor was there one killed upon the  
Spot; and though more than Twenty were  
wounded, three only died some Days after.

Next Morning *Kouli Kan*, before he quitted He orders  
the Mosque he had retired to, resolved to take a cruel Re-  
a bloody Revenge for the Design formed a-<sup>venge.</sup>  
gainst him. He ordered the captive Conspi-  
rators to be empaled under the Walls of the  
Temple; and then sending for his Generals,  
commanded them to put all their Troops un-  
der Arms, to take Possession of all the Streets  
and

and Quarters of the City, to plunder every House, and to put to the Sword every Inhabitant, without Distinction of Age or Sex. Immediately was seen the most horrible Slaughter that ever History recorded. The *Persian* Soldiers pillaged, violated, and massacred without Mercy. The River *Gemma*, upon which the City of *Deli* is built, was very soon dyed with the Blood of these unhappy Victims.

*Nazamel-*  
*molk* expo-  
sulates  
with him  
boldly.

Alarmed at the Noise made by the Tumult of this bloody Scene, *Nazamelmolk*, who was still detained a Prisoner upon the Occasion before related, found Means to escape out of his Captivity, got Information that *Schah Nadir* was in the Mosque near the *Seraglio*, and rushed into his Presence. He found this Conqueror eating of Sweet-meats, and feeding his Eyes with the frightful Tragedy which his Soldiers were acting. *I know very well*, said the *Omrah* as he drew near, *that I deserve Death for having broke out of Prison; nor do I come to ask my Life at thy Hands. But what have all these Innocents done, which thou, fierce and relentless, causest thus to be butchered? Have they attempted any thing against thee? Even if they had, is it just that thou shouldst destroy so many Thousands of Souls, for a Design which thou canst not reasonably condemn? Can any thing be more natural to Man, than a Desire to deliver himself from Tyranny and Oppression? Consult thy own Conscience; ask it if thou hast made a good Use of thy Victory: Thou wilt then see that it was not Ingratitude which prompted those who conspired against thy Person, but a natural innate Love of Peace and Tranquillity. Why dost thou torment and grieve, by a thousand new Ways, those*  
whom

whom thou hast conquered? They are Men, and thou treatest them like Beasts. If thy insatiable Desire of Riches had not prevented, all Indostan had adored thee: But by thy violent Exactions thou hast made Men desperate, and rendered those thy Enemies, who, after having acknowledged thee their Conqueror, would ever have remained thy Friends. How canst thou, who pretendest to exalted and heroic Sentiments, how canst thou fall into these detestable Excesses of Cruelty?

These Words, pronounced with a firm And pre- and intrepid Tone, brought the Victor again vails. to himself. He not only forgave the *Omrah* the honest Freedom he had made use of, but sent Orders immediately to his Generals to put a Stop to the Massacre. They soon executed their Commission, in Consequence of that good Discipline which the *Schah* makes all his Soldiers observe. *Nazamelmolk* was looked upon as the Deliverer of *Deli*: The *Schah* gave him his Liberty, and shewed afterwards a particular Esteem for his Person.

Having satiated his Vengeance, *Kouli Kan* The *Mogul* was willing to give some Proofs of his Gene- restored. rosity. He released the *Mogul* from his Confinement, and re-established him in his Empire. He even made an Abatement in the annual Tribute which he had at first exacted, and reduced it to three *Kourours*. It was upon this Occasion that *Mahmet-Cha* wrote him a Letter, in Form of a Declaration; a Translation of which here follows:



His Letter  
to Kouli  
Kan.

*To the most gracious Schah Nadir, King of Kings, comparable to Mahomet, Imitator of Alexander, and the living Image of the Divinity.*

YOU have sent us an Embassador, to communicate to us your Intentions, with regard to the Treaty that was concluded by our *Omrah Nazamelmolk*, and you consent to fix the annual Tribute which you impose on us at three *Kourours*, on the Payment of which you engage yourself to assist our glorious Empire with all your Forces, against any Power who shall have the Temerity to attack it. We thank you for this new Favour, and acknowledge that we are indebted to you for Life, Liberty, and the Crown which we wear; and we will forget nothing that may testify our profound Gratitude. In consequence of this, we acknowledge you for the legitimate Sovereign of the Kingdom of *Cabul*, the *Indian Sea*, the Country of the *Patans*, the Castles of *Iexel* and *Cudabaar*, and of all that is comprehended between the Districts of *Tatta* and *Retta*, quite to the Banks of the *Indus*.

Who sets  
out for  
*Persia*.

Towards the End of *May*, *Kouli Kan* began his March to return into *Persia* with all his Army, loaded with the rich Spoils of *Indostan*, and conducting with them a prodigious Number of Camels and Elephants, the greatest part of them labouring under the immense Treasures of the *Mogul*, which were now the Property of his Victor.

*Mahmet-*

*Mahmet-Cha* would bear him Company as far as *Agra*. This City, as well as *Deli*, stands upon the *Gemma*, which is the *Jomanes* of *Pliny*, in 28 Degrees 30 Minutes North Latitude, at the Distance of 210 Leagues from *Surat*. Before the Reign of *Akbar* it was only a large Town; but that Monarch made it a City, and it is now beyond Dispute the largest in all *India*. The Natives call it *Akbar-Abad*, the City or Colony of *Akbar*. It is at no great Distance from *Deli*, which it also resembles in Form, making a large Crescent, the two Ends of which run to the Banks of the River. *Akbar* at first chose *Fetipour* for the Capital of his Empire, and then established his Residence at *Deli*, which he soon quitted, and made choice of *Agra*. He enlarged this Place extremely, and the Grandees of his Court vied with each other to build in it magnificent Palaces, upon the common Court Principle of pleasing their Master. *Agra* extends in Length 9 *Italian* Miles, or three Leagues; but then it is more long than broad. It had no Walls in the Time of its Founder, but only a large Ditch that environed it on every Side. The Number of the Inhabitants amounted, by Computation, to 660,000; not to mention the Foreigners which the Convenience of the Caravanferas, and the Facility of Commerce, brought thither daily from all the Countries of *Asia*.

*Akbar* began his Works in this City by building the Castle, which he affected to make larger than any one that was at that Time in the *Indies*; and as the Situation of

of the old Castle appeared to him fine and commodious, he had it pulled down, and upon the same Spot laid the Foundation of the new one which stands at this Day. He encompassed it with a Wall of Brick and Stone, which was terrassed or rampiered in several Places, and raised to the Height of 25 Cubits; and between the Castle and the River he left a large open Area, for the Performance of such Exercises as it should please his *Mogulian* Majesty to chuse for his Diversion.

Its Imperial Palace

The Imperial Palace, as at *Deli*, stands within the Circuit of the Castle. It contains three Courts, adorned all round with Porticoes, and fine painted or gilt Galleries. Some Parts of the Building are even covered with Plates of Gold. Under the Galleries of the first Court are situated the Barracks, or Lodgements for those of his Majesty's Body-Guard. The Officers have their Lodgings in the second Court; and it is in the Third that you see the magnificent Apartments of the *Mogul* and his Women. From this Court there is a Passage to a fine Divan, that overlooks the River, and to which his Majesty repairs when he has a mind to divert himself with the Battles of his Elephants, or to see his Troops perform their Exercise, or to amuse himself in any other Manner that he shall judge most proper, by Spectacles either on the Water or in the Square.

Other Palaces.

This Palace is accompanied with 25 or 30 other very large ones, which stand upon the same Line, and belong to the Princes or other great Lords of the Court. This makes the

the whole Prospect, from the other side of the River, the most beautiful Sight in the Universe; and it would be yet finer but for the long and high Walls that are built to enclose the Gardens, and which contribute much to make the City so extensive. Upon the same Side stand several lesser Palaces, and other Buildings. For every one desiring to enjoy the Benefit of this exquisite View, and the Convenience of the *Gemmas*, endeavoured to find a Place upon this Shore. The City therefore is very long, but not broad; and, excepting a few, which are open and well built, the Streets are narrow, and without Uniformity.

What makes the Beauty of *Agra*, next to these Palaces, are above 60 Caravanseras, and more than 12 Squares. Some of these Caravanseras have to the Number of 6 Courts, all surrounded with Porticoes, or Arcades, which lead into convenient Apartments, for the Reception of Foreign Merchants, who trade hither. There are likewise above 800 Bagnios, and a very great Number of Mosques, some of which serve for Places of Refuge. You also meet with many Pieces of magnificent Sculpture, which some of the Grandees had the Ambition to erect in their Life-time to their own Memory, or to consecrate to the Memory of their Ancestors. The Founder of the City's Monument stands upon an Eminence, and by much surpasses in Magnificence those of the great Lords; but the most beautiful of all is that of *Tage-Mahal*, the Wife of *Cha-Gehan*. One may judge, from the Expence bestowed on this

this Structure, the Violence of the Monarch's Love. The magnificent Garden, in which all the Parts of this Monument are divided, the large Pavillions erected there with their splendid Fronts, the fine Portico's, the superb Dome which contains the Tomb, the charming Disposition of its Columns, the Elevation of the Vaults, which support several Galleries above, the Terrasses and other Ornaments, are in a Taste perhaps that to an *European* would seem extravagant ; but, though it does not resemble that of the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, it has nevertheless great Beauties. I will only add, that this *Mausoleum* was 20 Years in building.

Popularity  
and Hou-  
es.

The City of *Agra* is at this Time pretty populous, but not enough so to raise 200,000 Men fit to bear Arms, as some *Europeans* have writ. The Palaces, with their Gardens, take up the greatest part of its Ground ; so that nothing can be inferred from its Extent with respect to the Number of its Inhabitants. The middling Sort of Houses are low : Those of the common People are mere Cottages, and have very little Room and few People in them. You may walk the Streets without being crouded, except just when the Court is there. At that Time indeed there is great Confusion, and there seems to be an infinite Number of People ; but they consist chiefly of the Officers and Servants of the *Mogul*, those of his *Omrahs* and *Rajas*, and the Army which always attends him as his Guard.

Among the different Nations that live in *Agra*, as well as in other Parts of *India*, there seems



seems to be a great Uniformity of Dress. Only the *Mahometans*, whom the *Portuguese* call *Moors*, distinguish them outwardly by a Particular Sort of Head-dress; but in every thing else they are clothed exactly like others. The *Indian* Drawers are usually made of Cotton, and extend in some only to the Middle of the Leg; whereas others wear them longer, quite down to their Ankle-bone. Those who are fond of being finely dressed, have their Drawers made of striped Silk, and wear them so long, that they gather them up about the Leg in several Folds; and of these they are as fond, as our pretty Fellows in *Europe* are of their Silk stockings with Gold Clocks. They let their Shirt hang over their Drawers, which is the Custom all over the East. These Shirts are all open, from Top to Bottom; as are also their Upper Garments, which they call *Cabas*. The Reason they usually give for wearing them so, is, that they find them most convenient, as being easily put on or off: But they have yet another Reason for it; which is, that they throw them open to take in the fresh Air, whenever they happen to be alone in sultry Weather.

When it is cold, the *Indians* have an *Arca*-The *Arca-luc*, or Waistcoat, stuffed with Cotton and *luc*. quilted, the Outside of which is usually a Chints, or some painted Cloth; and their Colours are so lively and lasting, that when the Garment is dirty they may wash it, without doing any Damage.

Over the *Arca-luc* they put the *Cabas*, The *Ca-* which is an upper Vest; but when they *bas*.

wear both, you are to suppose it not warm, which is very seldom in these Parts, where they have no Winter. The *Cabas* is usually a close Jacket, with a sort of Petticoat fastened to it at the Waist. It is all the way open, and full of Plaits below, that it may be no Impediment in walking. There is a Collar to it of the same Stuff, about 2 Inches broad. They do not button this Vest like us, but lay it over upon the Stomach, first from Right to Left, and then from Left to Right, tying it with Strings of the same Stuff about a Foot long, and two Inches broad. They have six or eight Pair of these Strings from Top to Bottom, but tie only the upper and under Pairs, letting the rest hang down loose by way of Ornament.

Girdles,  
the *Cadebi*, and the  
*Chal*.

It is not common for them to use the fine *Persian* Girdles; at least, they are used only by Persons of Quality and large Fortune: Others wear only one Girdle of white Linen, whereas the *Persians* have two. When it is very cold, the *Indians* put over all these Garments a Vestment which they call *Cadebi*; which among People of Fortune is generally very magnificent. These are of Gold Brocade, or some other beautiful Stuff, and turned up with the finest Sable Fur. They put on, whenever they go abroad, a *Chal*, which is a Sort of Vest made of very fine Linen, and wrought at *Cachemire*. These *Chals* are about two Ells long, and one Ell broad: Such of them as are good will come to from 25 to 30 Crowns. There are some that cost 50 Crowns, but then they are extremely fine. They put this Robe over their

their Shoulders, and tie the two Ends upon their Stomach; the Fold hanging down below their Reins. Some wear it in Form of a Scarf, and on Occasion bring it over their Head, and make a Sort of Cap of the End of it.

The Turbans which the *Indians* wear, are usually small. That of the *Mahometans* isban and White. The Rich make it of a Linen so fine, that 25 or 30 Ells of it, which they frequently use, will not sometimes weigh Four Ounces. These Linens are made in the Neighbourhood of *Bengal*: They cost a great Price, and a Turban of this Kind will come to a very large Sum, perhaps 3 or 4 Score Pounds *Sterling*. When they are artfully twisted up, they very much resemble the Shape of the Head; for they are higher three or four Inches behind than they are before. As to the Cloathing of their Legs, they wear in *India* neither Stockings nor Socks; but put their Feet naked into *Marocco* Shoes, which are almost of the same Shape as the *Turkish* Pabouches. Persons of Distinction lace these Shoes with Gold.

The *Mogul* Women, who chuse to distinguish themselves from others, dress themselves almost like the Men; but the Sleeves of their Shifts, like those of the other *Indian* Ladies, never come below their Elbows, that they may have Room to adorn the lower Part of the Arm with Jewels, and with Bracelets of Gold, Silver, or Ivory. Sometimes they glitter with Diamonds, as do also the lower Part of their Legs.

Many People at *Agra* take delight in breed-

Bred Animals.

breeding up of Animals, in order to divert themselves with making them fight; and as Elephants and Lions are very expensive to maintain, the greatest Part of them are content to keep Goats, Rams, Cocks, Harts and Antelopes, to entertain their Friends with the Battles of these Animals.

*Kouli Kan* returns Home.

*Kouli Kan* staid a Fortnight at *Agra* with *Mahmet Cha*; after which the two Princes took their leave of each other; the later returning to *Deli*, and the other pursuing his Journey towards *Persia*. He passed thro' *Fetipour*; then, turning to the Right, and leaving *Bando* on the Left, he traversed many Desarts and Mountains, and arrived at *Mearta*; from whence, in a few Days Journey, he arrived at *Bouckar*, where he repassed the *Indus*. He put his Army in Quarters of Refreshment, partly in the Kingdom of *Cabul*, and partly in that of *Candahar*. Thence he took the Road to *Ispahan*, accompanied by his Regiments of Guards, with all the Treasures that have been recited, and several *Indian* Women, the most Beautiful he could find, in order to people his Seraglio. He was received in his Capital towards the End of *September*, and no possible Testimonies of Affection were wanting from his People.

Punishes the Infidelity of some Women in his Seraglio.

But he found great Disorder in his Seraglio, where 4 or 5 of his Wives had had Intrigues during his Absence, in Consequence of which, two of them were six Months gone with Child. The *Schah* ordered these to be ript up, and the others to be buried, both alive. Some of the Eunuchs, who were suspected of having favoured the Infidelity of these

these Women, were empaled. He punished with the same Rigour a Secretary, who had fled with 10 or 12 Slaves, carrying away several Papers of Importance. This Man was arrested 4 Leagues from *Ispahan*.

After these Examples of Severity, *Kouli Kan* Conjectured applied himself entirely to the Affairs of State. It was thought, after the wonderful Successes he had met with in *Indostan*, that he would attack either *Russia* or the *Turks*: But it does not hitherto appear that he chuses to embroil himself with the first of these Powers, nor break in too much Hurry with the other. Time must inform us in what Manner he will employ his numerous Army, which he keeps in continual Exercise.





# APPENDIX.

**I**T was certainly very judicious in our Author, not to continue his Narrative farther than he thought he could depend upon the Authenticity of his Accounts. But as we have several Times received Advices from the *East*, since the last that he seems to have made use of, I thought it proper to add what is now farther known concerning the Hero of these Sheets.

Account  
of the  
Booty taken  
by *Kou-  
li Kan*.

There has been an Inventory published in *Europe*, and said to be transmitted from *Is-  
pahan*, of all the Booty which this Conqueror brought home from *India*. The Elephants, Camels, Artillery, Tents, and Ammunition, amount to the Value of 3 Kourours; the ready Coin, in Gold and Silver, taken out of the Royal Treasury, to 15 Kourours; the Rings and Jewels of all Sorts, to 8 Kourours; the Emperor's Bed of State, adorned with precious Stones, to 7 Kourours; an Imperial Throne, set with Diamonds, to 9 Kourours; the Basons, and other the like Utensils, adorned also with precious Stones, to 11 Kourours; the ready Money and Jewels taken from the Emperor's Wives and Children, to 3 Kourours; the Plunder of the City of *Deli*, to 10 Kourours; what was exacted from the *Onguils*, and other Persons in the Service of the *Omrahs*, the *Nabals*,

*bals*, and the *Rajas*, to 10 Kourours; what *Commarudien-Can*, the Emperor's Favourite, was obliged to give, to 16 Kourours: The whole, added to what arose from the Estates of four other Ministers, who were put to Death at the Desire of *Kouli Kan*, amounts to 111 Kourours. The Kourour, according to what has been already said, contains 100 Lacks, and each Lack 100,000 Roupees: So that in each Kourour are 10 Millions of Roupees. The Roupee at *Bengal* is Thirty-pence, or Two Shillings sixpence *Sterling*; which by Multiplication brings the Kourour to 1,313,000 Pounds of the same Denomination; and this again multiplied by 111, amounts to the almost incredible Sum of 145 Millions 743 Thousand Pounds.

What I have to observe on this Account Reflexive, is, that it sets the Price of the *Great Mogul's* sons on the Throne at above double the Sum that our *Mogul's* Author has rated it: But if we consider that *Throne*, the *Sieur Bernier*, from whom he has taken this Particular, travelled and wrote in the last Century, since when, the Valuation of Things may have greatly altered; and if we reflect likewise that since that Time died the Magnificent *Aureng-Zeb*, and that several Princes have succeeded to this Throne, all of whom have been possessed of the rich Diamond Mines in the *Indian Peninsula*, and would probably endeavour to outvy each other in adorning this Monument of *Oriental Pomp and Vanity*; all this, I say, considered, we have no Reason to wonder that what was worth only 4 Kourours when the *French Traveller* resided at *Deli*, should be worth 9 when

when the *Persian* Monarch took Possession of that Capital.

On the Diversity of Accounts in other Particulars.

There are some other Particulars, in which later Memoirs seem to disagree with those our Author wrote from. *Sadat-Kan*, who in his Narrative loses his Life at the first Attack of the *Mogul's* Lines, is by others (even in a Letter said to be written with *Schah Nadir's* own Hand) made a Prisoner at the Battle of *Corbaal*. To which add, that instead of 500,000 Horse in the *Mogul* Army, that Number has been with more Probability applied to the Foot, and the Cavalry computed at only 200,000 : But then the Number of Elephants and Artillery has been in Proportion as much enlarged, as that of the Men has been lessened ; it being affirmed that there were 3000 armed Elephants, and 8000 Pieces of Cannon in the Army of the *Indian* Monarch.

*Kouli Kan* remits several Taxes.

There cannot be a more certain Indication of the immense Wealth acquired in this Expedition, nor a stronger Circumstance to confirm what has been here recited, than the *Ragam* or Edict sent by the Conqueror from *Deli* into *Persia*, containing a Remittance of a great Number of Taxes for the whole Term of Three Years. I cannot but observe likewise, that this Remittance vindicates *Kouli Kan* from that avaritious Character with which he has been charged, and which his Rigour at *Deli* seemed but too justly to fix upon him. At least it proves, that he is not an Oppressor of his own Subjects, however severely he may treat his Enemies. But the prodigious Sum taken from *Commarudien*

*marudien-Can*, the Mogul's Favourite, amounting to 21 Millions eight Thousand Pounds, may shew us that a Master's Lenity to his People, may have no great Influence upon a Minister. It is remarkable that this Article, from the Private Chest of one Man, a Prime Minister, is the largest in all the Inventory of *Kouli Kan's* Booty.

It is not without Justice therefore that *Mahmet-Mahmet-Cha*, notwithstanding his good natural Disposition, has been charged with bad Government; and that this sudden, and al-

most unparalleled Revolution, is said to be owing to a Revolt in People's Minds. The Commonalty groaned under the Oppression of the *Grandeers*. While the Emperor was taken up with his Pleasures, he left the Management of his Empire to *Commarudien-Can*, who minded nothing but amassing Riches. The State was without Disciplined Troops, except only the Emperor's Guards; because the Generals charged to maintain them, put the Sums appointed for that Use into their own Pockets. Rebels from the Coasts of *Malabar* and *Coromandel* used to advance into the Heart of *Indostan*, where the little Resistance they met with, shewed how easy it would be for such a Leader as *Kouli Kan* to conquer that Empire.

Whether that Hero did indeed receive some Reports little Shock in his Return to *Persia*, or, which to *Kouli* is more likely, whether it was owing to the *Kan's* *Turks*, who apprehended that after so much advantage. Success he would revive the old Quarrel with them, and therefore strove to keep up the Spirits of their Soldiery, is a Matter that has

not yet been fully cleared up. But certain it is, that we were for some Time amused with a pretended Letter from *Smyrna*, informing us, that the Conqueror was actually in such a Situation as he would not easily extricate himself from; that his Army was reduced to 40,000 Men, and that he wrote to his Son, who was yet in a worse Condition thro' Dissatisfaction at home, for a Reinforcement; that the *Indians* had retaken most of his Booty, upon his passing the *Indus*, and obliged him to a precipitate Retreat; and that the *Aghwans*, to the Number of 60,000, were ready to attack him on the other Side.

Who conquers the *Usbecks*.

However, if there was in reality any thing in this Report, it served only to shew us that *Kouli Kan* knew as well how to retrieve an adverse Accident, as to pursue his good Success. The Chastisement he soon after inflicted on the *Usbeck Tartars*, a powerful Nation, and his secret Enemies during all his Wars, both in *Candahar* and *Indostan*, sufficiently testifies that neither was his Authority lessened, nor his Men dispirited. We have not as yet a very particular Account of this *Usbeckian War*; but are well assured that he twice defeated the Enemy, tho' Superior to him in Number, and that he took *Buchara*, the Capital and Residence of the chief *Han* or King, by Storm. The *Persians* spent three Days in pillaging it, and got a vast Booty: Upon which all the Country submitted to the Conqueror. Whether he will act by the *Han* of the *Usbecks* as he did by the *Mogul*, I mean restore him to his Dominions, or keep the Sovereignty of this Country, which will



will open him a Way into *Russia* on the East, as he had before on the West of the *Caspian Sea*, is what Time alone can determine.

*Usbeck*, or *Zagathray*, is bounded on the *Usbeck* or North by the *Russian Calmucks* and Defart *Tar-Zagathay* tary, on the West by the *Caspian Sea*, on the South by *Persia* and *India*, and on the East by *Turcheſtan*. It contains the antient Provinces of *Sacæ*, *Sogdiana*, Part of *Scythia*, and *Bactria* in Old *Persia*. In Length it extends 1200 Miles, and in Breadth 840 ; containing ſeveral conſiderable Towns, of which the Chief are *Buchara* and *Samarſand*. *Usbeck* is generally reputed the principal and beſt cultivated Part of all *Tartary*, and the Inhabitants have long carried on a large Trade with their Neighbours of *Persia* and *Indoſtan*. It has other Princes beſides the *Han* of *Buchara* ; but he, as being the moſt Powerful, and able to bring into the Field 100,000 Men, is uſually called *Han* of the *Usbecks*. In the Wars of *Peter the Great*, one of theſe *Hans* offered to lend that Prince 50,000 Soldiers. *Buchara* and *Samarſand* are about 50 Leagues diſtant from each other. The former lies on the River *Oxus*, and the other upon a leſſer River that falls into it. They are both famous ; *Buchara* for giving Birth to *Avicenna* the Philoſopher, and *Samarſand* for being not only the Birth-Place, but the Royal Reſidence of *Tamerlane*, and for an Univerſity founded by him, which is in Repute to this Day among the *Mahometans*. It is ſituated in a pleaſant Valley, and defended by a Caſtle.

Such is the Country, and such the People that *Schah Nadir* has subdued, since his triumphant Return from *India*. As it is expected that his next Enterprize will be against the *Turks*, between whom and the *Persians* there is an irreconcilable Hatred; it may not be amiss to say a Word or two of the City of *Mecca*, which the latter, as *Mahometans*, claim an equal Right to with the former.

Conque- Towards the Conclusion of the first Part of this  
rors never History, there is inserted a Copy of the full Pow-  
want Pre-ers granted to the *Turkish* Embassador, by which  
tences for the *Grand Signor* grants the *Persians* free Li-  
War. berty to make the Pilgrimage of *Mecca*. The  
Design of this seems to have been, to have  
taken from *Kouli Kan* all future Pretences for  
renewing Hostilities upon a Religious Mo-  
tive. But Treaties lay little Restraint upon  
the Minds of Conquerors, who, flushed with  
Success, never want some plausible Reason  
for pursuing their good Fortune. As the ob-  
taining of free Access to the Prophet's Birth-  
place has already been one of *Kouli Kan's* Rea-  
sons for a War, may not his next pious Design  
be to rescue this Holy City out of the Hands  
of Hereticks? Tho' he has now no Preten-  
sions on the *Ottoman Porte*, for Countries  
formerly conquered from *Persia*, there is no  
doubt but he will form some on another  
Foundation and none so likely as a religious  
one.

*Mecca* and *Medina* described. *Mecca* is seated in *Arabia Felix*, at a little  
Distance from the River *Chaibar*, in a dry  
and barren Valley, surrounded on all Sides  
with Mountains. It has imposed its Name  
on the neighbouring Gulph, and is the Ca-  
pital

pital of a Territory governed by its own Prince; under Protection of the *Porte*. He is called the *Scherif*, or *Scheck* of *Mecca*; and, as he derives his Origin from *Mahomet*, is highly revered by the People, and loaded with Presents from Superstitious Votaries. Two Hundred Miles North of *Mecca* stands *Medina*, where the Prophet was buried. His Tomb is supported by Four slender Pillars, which occasioned the Vulgar Opinion, that it hangs in the Air between Load-stones. This Place is equally resorted to with *Mecca*, and might be made equally the Subject of a Religious War.

I shall only add, that the Conquest of The Con-  
all the South and most valuable Part of quest of  
*Arabia* seems to be the most easy Task that *Arabia*-  
our *Persian* has to perform; especially with *Felix* easy  
the Assistance of a small Naval Force, for to *Kouli*  
transporting his Troops over the Streight of *Kan*.  
*Ormuz*, which he might procure from the  
*Europeans* in the neighbouring Seas. It is scarce  
a Century and a Half ago, that *Schah Abas* the  
*Great*, by the same means made himself Master  
of all the Sea-Coasts of this vast Country, and  
even took *Medina* itself. I call it the most  
easy Task, because the Princes he has to  
deal with are in no Sense his Equals, and  
could receive little if any Assistance from  
the *Turks*. A very small Matter might cut  
these off from all Communication with *Ara*-  
*bia Felix*, except by way of the *Red Sea*;   
for North *Arabia* is almost one continued  
sandy Defart quite across, which would scarce  
be passable to an Army, and is with Dif-  
K 2 faculty

culty traversed by the Caravans. How little the *Turks* have been able to perform beyond this, is evident from the Independence of several Princes, who all lie open to the Arms of *Kouli Kan*.

P. S. *We have received the following Articles by the Holland Mail, just Time enough to insert them here. As the Particulars they contain have not been confirmed, we shall leave them to the Reader without any Remarks.*

PETERSBOURG, Nov. 1. 1741

THE Report that was spread of a bloody Battle between the *Sophi's* Troops and some Rebels in the *Daghestan*, is contradicted by the *Persian* Ambassador. However, he owns that the *Schah* has marched into the Mountains of that Country, and is actually reducing the Rebels, in which he meets with more Difficulties than he imagin'd. The said Ambassador reports, that the *Sophi* of *Persia* is a very tall, well-built Man; that he takes great Pains to get *European* Officers into his Service, to discipline his Soldiers, whom he intends to put on the same Footing as the *European* Troops. His Excellency adds, that the *Schah* is of a brisk enterprising Temper; that he is always forming vast Projects, and executes them almost as soon as they are conceived. He also reports of this Monarch, that his Voice is so strong, that

that one may hear him distinctly at the Distance of 300 Yards, when he speaks loud without straining himself.

*Extract of a Private Letter from Constantinople, Octob. 3.*

THE Hostilities pretended, some Time ago, to have been commenc'd against this Empire by *Thamas Kouli Kan*, were only idle Reports, to which it was hard to give any Credit. We have received more Accounts on this Subject, in the Letters lately sent to the *Grand Signor* by *Bashaw Achmet*, who commands at *Babylon*. According to those Letters, the Army which *Thamas Kouli Kan* assembled in *August* last, on the Frontiers of *Armenia*, consisted of near 130,000 Men. He remained quiet in his Camp, without forming any Enterprize, because he waited for the Return of the last Embassador he sent hither, in order to frame his Conduct by his Report, either to begin Hostilities, or to adjust all Differences by an Accommodation. In the mean Time, *Kouli Kan's* eldest Son thought he perceived that his Father did not harbour a very good Opinion of him, and that he even had some Design of excluding him from the Succession to the *Persian* Throne, in order to secure it to his second Son. Full of these Imaginations, he found means to gain over to his Interest some Generals who had most Influence on the Army: The Generals succeeded in securing Part of the

K 3

Troops



‘ Troops in the young Prince’s Interest ; and  
 ‘ so an open Revolt ensued in Favour of the  
 ‘ Son against the Father. The rest of the  
 ‘ Army, which remained attached to the Fa-  
 ‘ ther, attacked the Rebels with so much  
 ‘ Advantage, that they were defeated, and  
 ‘ their Generals taken Prisoners, along with  
 ‘ the Prince for whom they rose up in Arms  
 ‘ against their Sovereign. *Thomas Kouli Kan*,  
 ‘ who did all that could be expected from a  
 ‘ great Captain, as well as a Soldier, during  
 ‘ the Engagement, had his Hand pierced  
 ‘ by a Musket Bullet. A few Days after  
 ‘ he ordered his eldest Son to be brought be-  
 ‘ fore him, reproached him with his Rebel-  
 ‘ lion, and his Attempt against his Life, and  
 ‘ then condemned him to Death. As to the  
 ‘ Generals who sided with the Son, some of  
 ‘ them were impaled, others had their Eyes  
 ‘ put out, their Tongues torn up by the  
 ‘ Root, &c. As the common Soldiers could  
 ‘ not all be punished, they were decimated.  
 ‘ According to these Advices, *Kouli Kan* on-  
 ‘ ly waits the Return of his Embassador, in  
 ‘ order to take a final Resolution as to Peace  
 ‘ or War with the *Porte*.

FINIS.

INDEX

# INDEX.

## A

- A* Bas, Schah, Sophi of Persia, his History. Part i, Page 79 &c.
- Abas* II. King of Persia. p. i, 83
- Abas* III. an Infant, set on the Throne by Thamas Kouli Kan. p. i, 127
- Abdul Bucki-Kan*, Kouli Kan's Embassador to the Turk. p. i, 148, &c.
- Abubecker*, Caliph of Persia. p. i, 54
- Abuchaid*, the Great Mogul. p. ii, 8
- Achmet-Bassa*, his full Powers to treat of Peace with Kouli Kan. p. i, 49
- Ackbar*, the Great Mogul. p. ii, 9
- Adirbeizan*, Province of. p. i, 21
- Aghwans*, Origin of their Revolt, p. i, 86. Divided in their Religion, 96. Elect Eschref in the room of Magmund, 95. Their Regulations in Persia, 99, 100. Expelled Isfahan. 117
- Agra*, City of, described, p. ii, 85. The Castle, *ib.* Imperial Palace, 84. Other Palaces, *ib.* Caravanferas, Squares, &c. 85. Popularity and Houses. 86
- Albania*, or *Baku*, Province of. p. i, 25
- Alexander* the Great. p. i, 52
- Ali*, Caliph of Persia. p. i, 55
- Ararat*, Mountain, in Armenia. p. i, 3
- Araxes*, River. p. ii, 5
- Ardebil*, City of. p. i, 24
- Arme-*

<i>Armenia</i> , Province of.	p. i, 30
<i>Aršamenes</i> , King of Persia.	p. ii, 51
<i>Aršadicæ</i> , Kings of Persia.	p. ii, 53
<i>Astyages</i> , King of the Medes.	p. i, 41
<i>Artaxerxes Longimanus</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 50
<i>Artaxerxes Mnemon</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 51
<i>Attock</i> taken by Kouli Kan.	p. ii, 35
<i>Aureng-zeb</i> , the Great Mogul,	p. ii, 10

## B

<b>B</b> <i>Abar</i> , the Great Mogul.	p. ii, 9
<i>Bajazet</i> , taken Prisoner by Tamerlane.	p. i, 59
<i>Bajazet</i> II. declares War against Ismael.	p. i, 72
<i>Bed of State</i> , the Mogul's.	p. ii, 71
<i>Bojites</i> , their Empire in Persia.	p. i, 57

## C

<b>C</b> <i>Abul</i> , City of, described.	p. ii, 21. Taken. 29
<i>Cabulistan</i> , Province of, described.	p. ii, 18
<i>Cabulistan</i> s, their Religion.	p. ii, 22
<i>Caliphs</i> of Persia.	p. i, 53
<i>Cambyfes</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 45, &c.
<i>Candabar</i> , Kingdom of, p. i, 26. City, of 27.	
A Rebellion there, 86, &c. Another, 157.	
The Place taken by Kouli Kan.	158
<i>Caspian</i> City, in Persia.	p. i, 12
<i>Caspian</i> Sea.	p. i, 4
<i>Caswin</i> City, in Persia.	p. ii, 11
<i>Caucasus</i> , the highest Mountain in Persia.	p. i, 2
<i>Cha-</i>	

<i>Cha-Gehan</i> , the Great Mogul,	p. ii, 10
<i>Chorasan</i> , Province of.	p. i, 26
<i>Chusistan</i> , Province of.	p. i, 13
<i>Codabende</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 78
<i>Com</i> City, in Persia.	p. i, 13
<i>Combrou</i> , Town of.	p. i, 15
<i>Curdistan</i> , Province of.	p. i, 13
<i>Cyrus</i> , his Birth, Education, Actions, and Death.	p. i, 41, &c.

## D

<b>D</b> <i>Aghestan</i> , Province of.	p. i, 27
<i>Darabگرد</i> , Town of.	p. i, 15
<i>Darius Hystaspes</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 48
<i>Darius Nothus</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 50
<i>Darius Codomanus</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 52
<i>Deli</i> , City of, its Situation, p. ii, 63. The new Town, 64. The Citadel and Seraglio, 65. Chief Streets, 66. Houses, 67. Statues, <i>ib.</i> Streets within the Citadel, 68. Mechanics, 69. The Amkas, or Place of Audience, <i>ib.</i> The Cosel-Kamé, 72. Mosques, <i>ib.</i> The Princess's Caravanseera, 73. Inhabitants of, irritated by Kouli Kan.	77
<i>Derbent</i> , City of.	p. i, 25

## E

<b>E</b> <i>Lepphants</i> , the Mogul's.	p. ii, 18
<i>Emen-Abad</i> taken by Kouli Kan.	p. ii, 43
<i>Emir-Hemse</i> , King of Persia.	p. i, 78
<i>Erivan</i> , City of.	p. i, 23
<i>Eschref</i> , Town of.	p. i, 19
	<i>Es-</i>

*Eschref* elected Chief of the Aghwans, p. i, 95.  
 His Perfidy, 96. Proposes a Peace with  
 the Turks, 97. Why he did not suc-  
 ceed, *ib.* Has another Enemy to fear, 98.  
 Defeated by Kouli Kan, 114. Abandons  
 Ispahan, 116. Defeated again by Kouli  
 Kan, who puts him to Death. 119

## F

*Fars*, Province of. p. i, 14  
*Ferabad*, Town of, in Persia, p. i, 12.  
 City of. 18  
*Fresh Water Sea.* p. i, 24

## G

*Gehan-Guire*, the Great Mogul, p. ii, 10  
*Gengis* taken by Kouli Kan. p. i, 140  
*Georgia*, Country of, p. i, 28. Natives of. 29  
*Georgia*, Prince of, suspects *Mir-Weis*. p. i, 86  
*Gory*, Town of. p. i, 30  
*Guimenes*, Son of Sophi. p. i, 66

## H

*Azaray*, Province of. p. i, 27  
*Homayum*, the Great Mogul. p. ii, 9  
*Hussain*, Caliph of Persia. p. i, 57  
*Hussain*, Sophi of Persia, chosen by the Gran-  
 dees, p. i, 85, &c. Leaves the Govern-  
 ment to his Eunuchs, 86. Sends an Ar-  
 my against *Mir-Weis*, 88. Embarrassed, 90  
 Sends an Army against *Magmud*, which  
 is defeated, 91. Resigns his Throne to  
*Magmud*. 92

## I



## I

- I***ndians*, their Dress, p. ii. 87. The Analc. *ib.* The Cabas, *ib.* Girdles, &c. 88.  
 Turban and Shoes, 89. Women's Dress, *ib.* Their tame Animals. 90  
*Indostan*, or the Mogul Empire, described, p. ii, 7, 11, &c.  
*Indus*, River, p. i, 5. Particularly described. p. ii, 37. Passed by Kouli Kan. 39  
*Irack-Agemi*, Province of. p. i, 7  
*Ispahan*, City of, described, p. i, 7. Palace there, 9. Tower. 10  
*Ismael*, Son of Sophi, King of Persia, p. i, 67, &c.  
*Ismael* II. King of Persia. p. i, 77  
*Ismael* III. King of Persia. p. i, 78

## K

- K***Irman*, Province of. p. i, 17  
*Kouli Kan*, *Thamas*, a long Letter concerning his Origin, p. i, 101. Remarks on it, 108. Extract of a Letter concerning him from the Marquis de Villeneuve, 110. Meaning of his Name, offers himself to Prince *Thamas*, *ib.* 111. Is a Captain of Thieves, 112. Remarks on that Quality, *ib.* Gains the Prince's Favour, *ib.* Defeats *Escrhef* Chief of the *Aghwans* near *Schiras*, 114. His Behaviour, 115. Beats General *Seydal*, *ib.* Conducts *Schah Thamas* into *Ispahan*, 116. Pursues *Eschref*, 117. Defeats him, puts out his Eyes, and cuts off his Head. 119. Sullies his Victory, 120. Enters

## I N D E X.

Enters Candahar, *ib.* His Progress, 121. Endeavours to divert Schah Thamas from a Peace with the Turks, 122. Provoked at his making it, *ib.* Quarrels with him, 123. Harangues the Officers against the Schah, 125. Whom he deposes, and sets his young Son Abas on the Throne, 127. Is declared Regent of the Kingdom, 128. Chuses a Council, *ib.* His Memorial to the Persian Embassadors at Constantino-ple, *ib.* Laughs at the Menaces of the Porte, 129. Applies for and obtains the Friendship of the Russians, 130. Declares War against the Turks, *ib.* Arrives at his Army, 131. Beats the Turks, 132. Complimented on his Victory, *ib.* Continues the War with Success, 133. Takes Teflis, 134. Prepares to meet Abdalla Bassa, 137. Whom he totally defeats, 139. Suppresses a Rebellion, 141. His Design upon the Crown, *ib.* Opposed therein, 142. A Speech in his Favour, 143. Proclaimed King, 144. Crowned, 145. Resumes the Name of Nadir, *ib.* Makes sure of the Royal Family, 146. Censured, *ib.* Negotiates a Peace with the Turks, 147. Why his Embassador feigns himself sick, 148. Concludes the Treaty, 153. Displeased with his Embassador concerning it, 155. His Embassador's Speech at Petersburg, *ib.* Takes Candahar, and suppresses a Rebellion, 157, 158. Severity to his own, and Contempt of the Turkish Embassador, 159. Particulars concerning his Person, Temper, Family, &c. 160, &c.

Intro-

Introduces Discipline among his Troops, p. ii, 2. Has an Artillery well supplied, 3. His Mandate to the Governor of Ispahan, *ib.* Resolves on a War against the Great Mogul, 6. Repulsed at first, 24. Conducted by a Patan, 25. Defeats the Governor of Cabulistan, 26. Letter thereupon to his Son, 27. Writes to the Great Mogul, offering Peace, 29. Substance of his Letter, 30. Takes Pishore, 35. Passes two Rivers, and takes Attock, *ib.* Approaches the Mogul, 36. Passes the Indus, 40. Defeats a Party, and takes Emen-Abad, 43. Defeats the Viceroy of Lahor, 44. Pursues him, 46. Takes the City, 47. State of his Army, 48. Attacks the Enemy's Entrenchments, 50. The Preliminaries he demands of the Mogul, 53. With whom he requires an Interview, 54. Account of it, 55. Enraged, gives cruel Orders, 59. But recedes from them, *ib.* Defeats the Mogul's Army, 61. Takes him with his Wives and Grandees, 62. How he treats him, *ib.* Sets out for Deli, 63. Enters that City, 74. Account of his Prisoners, *ib.* How he disposes of them, 75. His Treatment of the Omrahs and Rajas, *ib.* Assumes pompous Titles, 76. Irritates the Delians, 77. An Attempt of his which makes the Omrahs conspire against him, 78. He escapes, and the Conspirators are taken, 79. Orders a Cruel Revenge. *ib.* Which Nazamelmolk dissuades him from, 80, 81. Restores the Mogul, 81. Sets out for Persia, 82. Returns Home, 90.

L

Punishes

Punishes the Infidelity of some Women in his Seraglio, *ib.* Conjectures of his Designs, 91. Account of the Booty taken by him, 92. Reflexions on some Particulars of his History, 93. He remits several Taxes, 94. Reports to his Disadvantage, 95. He conquers the Usbecks, 96. Arabia Felix open to his Arms, 99. The last Advices concerning him. 100

## L

**L** *Abor*, Viceroy of, defeated, p. ii, 44.  
 City described, *ib.* Taken by Kouli Kan. 47  
*Lar*, Town of, p. i, 16.  
*Laristan*, Province of. p. i, 16  
*Letter*, or Mandate of Kouli Kan to the Governor of Ispahan, upon the Reduction of Candahar, p. ii, 3, &c. To his Son, upon the Defeat of Nasir-Can, 27. To the Great Mogul, offering Peace, 30. Reflexions on it, 31. — or Manifesto of the Mogul against Kouli Kan, 33. — or Declaration to Kouli Kan, 82  
*Loristan*, Province of. p. i, 14

## M

**M** *Aghbestan*, Province of, p. i, 25  
*Magnud* assassinate his Uncle, p. i, 90.  
 Unites the Aghwans, *ib.* Usurps the Throne of Persia, 92. Attempts to secure Prince *Thamas*, 93. His Cruelties, *ib.* Disordered both in Mind and Body, 95. Murdered. *ib.*  
*Ma-*

# INDEX.

- Mahomet*, why he would not go to Schiras. p. i,  
15. Seizes the Reins of Government. 54
- Mahomet II.* Emperor of the Turks. p. i. 61
- Mahmet-Cha*, the Great Mogul, his Descent,  
History and Character. p. ii. 10  
Writes haughtily to Kouli Kan, 33. Flies  
from his Army, 40. Persuaded to return,  
42. State of his Army, 47. Desires a  
Peace, 52. His Interview with Kouli  
Kan, 55. Holds a Council, 56. Agrees  
to grant all the Victor demands, 57. But  
disavows the Treaty when signed, *ib.* And  
persists in it, 58. In Despair, but signs  
the Treaty too late, 60. Prepares for a  
Battle, 61. Routed, *ib.* taken Prisoner  
with his Wives and Grandees, 62. Dines  
with Kouli Kan, 77. Ratifies the Treaty  
too late, *ib.* Restored. 81. Writes to  
Kouli Kan. 82
- Mazanderan*, Kingdom of. p. i. 17
- Mecca* and *Medina* described. p. ii, 98
- Mina*, Fortrefs of. p. i, 26
- Miracha* the Great Mogul. p. ii, 8
- Mir-Weis*, his Character, p. i, 86. Sent to  
Court, 87. His Projects, *ib.* Seizes Can-  
dahar, 88. Imposes on the Court concern-  
ing the Revolution, *ib.* Dies, 89. His  
Brother, *ib.* His Son. *ib.*
- Mirza-Sepi*, King of Persia. p. i, 84
- Moguls* Great, a Chronological Abridgement  
of their Reigns, p. ii, 8. &c. Their Forces,  
Power, &c. 18 and *seq.* Diversions while  
they give Audience, 70. Cavalcade to  
the great Mosque, 73
- Mogul Empire* described. p. ii, 7, 11, &c.



## INDEX.

*Mogul Ladies*, their Catastrophe, p. ii, 76  
*Muscovites* take Advantage of the Troubles in  
 Persia. p. i, 96

## N

**N** *Asir-Can*, Governor of Cabul, pre-  
 pares for a Defence against Kouli Kan,  
 p. ii, 23. Who defeats him. 26  
*Nazamelmolk*, the Omrah, persuades his Mas-  
 ter to return to his Army, p. ii, 41. Con-  
 fers with Kouli Kan, 52. Signs a Treaty  
 which his Master disavows, 57. Gains  
 Time of the enraged Victor, 59. Finds  
 the Mogul in Despair, 60. Expostulates  
 boldly with Kouli Kan, 80. And saves the  
 City of Deli. 81  
*Noah*, Where he planted the Vine, p. i, 24

## O

**O** *Chus*, King of Persia, p. i, 51  
*Omar*, Caliph of Persia. p. i, 54  
*Omrahs* and *Rajas*, how treated by Kouli  
 Kan, p. ii, 75. *Omrahs* conspire against  
 Kouli Kan, 78, Are taken and executed. 79  
*Ormus*, Isle of, p. i, 31. Conquest of. 33  
*Osman*, Caliph of Persia, p. i, 55.  
*Oxus*, River. p. i, 5

## P

**P** *Arthian Kings* of Persia. p. i, 52  
*Passagarda*, Town of, p. i, 16  
*Patans*, Account of them, p. ii, 24. One  
 of

- of them conducts Kouli Kan into Cabulistan. 25
- Persia*, Description of, p. i, 2. &c. Mountains in it, *ib.* Its Fruitfulness, 6. Trade, *ib.* King of, his Revenue, *ib.* His Vassal Princes, 7. Name of Persia. 40
- Persians*, their Religion, p. ii, 34. Divisions with the Turks, *ib.* 37. Reflexion thereon, 35. Lay no Restraint on Conscience, 38. Believe the Metempsychosis, 39. Their Character, 40
- Pishore* taken by Kouli Kan. p. ii, 35
- Princes*, Vassals of Persia. p. i. 7
- Porus*, King, his Magnificence described, p. ii, 37

Q

- Q**uintus Curtius, a Passage from him relating to King Porus. p. ii, 37

R

- R**agipous, Subjects of the Rajas. p. ii, 12
- Rajas*, Tributaries to the Great Mogul. p. ii, 12
- Rebellion*, Kouli Kan suppresses one. p. i, 141
- Revenues*, the Mogul's. p. ii, 14 & seq.
- Russia*, Empress of, her Answer to Kouli Kan's Embassador. p. i, 156
- Rustan*, gets Schah Adar assassinated. p. i, 66

S

## S

- S** *Adat-Can* arrives in Mahmet-Cha's Army, p. ii, 49. Slain. 57
- Sam*, Town of. p. i, 20
- Saracens*, Origin of the Word. p. i, 54
- Scamachia*, Town of. p. i, 20
- Scheik-Adar*, Son of Sophi. p. i, 66
- Scheik-Omar*, the Great Mogul. p. ii, 9
- Schiras*, City in Persia. p. i, 15
- Schirwan*, Province of. p. i, 25
- Sciates*, their Thoughts on Marriage. p. i, 38
- Sophi Kouli Kan* sent against Magmud, p. i, 91.
- His Son slain. *ib.*
- Sigistan*, Province of. p. i, 17
- Soliman II.* makes War against Sophi Thamas. p. i, 73
- Sophis*, Origin of their Family. p. i, 65
- Sultania* City, in Persia. p. i, 12

## T

- T** *Abristan*, Province of. p. i, 21
- Tamerlane*, his History. p. i, 58 &c.
- Tartars*, subdue Persia. p. i, 58
- Tauris*, City of. p. i, 21
- Taurus*, Mountains of. p. i, 3
- Teflis*, City of, p. i, 29. Taken by Kouli Kan. 140
- Thamas* King of Persia. p. i, 73 &c.
- Thamas*, Prince, his Party increases, p. i, 99.
- Takes Kouli Kan into his Service, 111.
- Enters Ispahan in Triumph, 116. His ill Conduct obliges him to sue for Peace to the

# INDEX.

115

the Turks, 121. Makes a shameful Treaty, 122. Kouli Kan quarrels with him, 123. And deposes him, 127. How treated afterwards. 128.

*Throne*, the Mogul's. p. ii, 19

*Tigris*, River. p. i, 4

*Topal-Osman*, the Turkish Seraskier, slain. p. ii, 132

*Turcomans* Reign in Persia. p. i. 57, 61

*Turks*, not fond of a War in Curdistan, p. i,

14. Take Advantage of the Troubles in

Persia, 96. Treats with Eschref, 91.

Their Arrogance to Schah Thamas, 123.

Threaten Kouli Kan, 129. At War

with him, and gain some Advantage be-

fore his Arrival, 130. Defeated by him,

132, 139. Imposed on by false Advices,

134. Treat of a Peace, 147. Conclude

it, 153. Will not be again affronted,

159

## U

*Villeneuve*, Marquess de, his Letter concerning Kouli Kan. p. i, 110

*Usbecks* conquered by Kouli Kan, p. ii, 96.

Their Country described. 97

*Usun-Cassan*, King of Persia, p. i, 61. His

Son conspires against him. p. i, 63

## X

*Xerxes* I, King of Persia. p. i, 49

## Y

## Y

*Y* *Acubeck*, King of Persia, p. i, 64  
*Yedz*, City of. p. i, 12

## Z

*Z* *Ablustan*, Province of. p. i, 17  
*Zend*, Country of.

*End of the INDEX.*

